# **DOM**

# **Living Standard** — **Last Updated 12 March** 2021



# Participate:

<u>GitHub whatwg/dom</u> (<u>new issue</u>, <u>open issues</u>) IRC: #whatwg on Freenode

# **Commits:**

GitHub whatwg/dom/commits Snapshot as of this commit @thedomstandard

#### Tests:

web-platform-tests dom/ (ongoing work)

# Translations (non-normative):

日本語

# **Abstract**

DOM defines a platform-neutral model for events, aborting activities, and node trees.

# **Table of Contents**

```
1 Infrastructure
       1.1 Trees
       1.2 Ordered sets
       1.3 Selectors
       1.4 Namespaces
2 Events
       2.1 Introduction to "DOM Events"
       2.2 Interface Event
       2.3 Legacy extensions to the Window interface
       2.4 Interface CustomEvent
       2.5 Constructing events
       2.6 Defining event interfaces
       2.7 Interface EventTarget
       2.8 Observing event listeners
       2.9 Dispatching events
       2.10 Firing events
       2.11 Action versus occurrence
3 Aborting ongoing activities
       3.1 Interface AbortController
       3.2 Interface AbortSignal
       3.3 Using AbortController and AbortSignal objects in APIs
4 Nodes
       4.1 Introduction to "The DOM"
       4.2 Node tree
              4.2.1 Document tree
              4.2.2 Shadow tree
                      4.2.2.1 Slots
                      4.2.2.2 Slottables
                      4.2.2.3 Finding slots and slottables
                      4.2.2.4 Assigning slottables and slots
                      4.2.2.5 Signaling slot change
              4.2.3 Mutation algorithms
              4.2.4 Mixin NonElementParentNode
              4.2.5 Mixin DocumentOrShadowRoot
              4.2.6 Mixin ParentNode
              4.2.7 Mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode
              4.2.8 Mixin ChildNode
              4.2.9 Mixin Slottable
              4.2.10 Old-style collections: NodeList and HTMLCollection
                      4.2.10.1 Interface NodeList
                      4.2.10.2 Interface HTMLCollection
       4.3 Mutation observers
              4.3.1 Interface MutationObserver
              4.3.2 Queuing a mutation record
              4.3.3 Interface MutationRecord
              4.3.4 Garbage collection
       4.4 Interface Node
```

```
4.5 Interface Document
              4.5.1 Interface DOMImplementation
       4.6 Interface DocumentType
       4.7 Interface DocumentFragment
       4.8 Interface ShadowRoot
       4.9 Interface Element
              4.9.1 Interface NamedNodeMap
              4.9.2 Interface Attr
       4.10 Interface CharacterData
       4.11 Interface Text
       4.12 Interface CDATASection
       4.13 Interface ProcessingInstruction
       4.14 Interface Comment
5 Ranges
       5.1 Introduction to "DOM Ranges"
       5.2 Boundary points
       5.3 Interface AbstractRange
       5.4 Interface StaticRange
       5.5 Interface Range
6 Traversal
       6.1 Interface NodeIterator
       6.2 Interface TreeWalker
       6.3 Interface NodeFilter
7 Sets
       7.1 Interface DOMTokenList
8 XPath
       8.1 Interface XPathResult
       8.2 Interface XPathExpression
       8.3 Mixin XPathEvaluatorBase
       8.4 Interface XPathEvaluator
9 Historical
Acknowledgments
Intellectual property rights
Index
       Terms defined by this specification
       Terms defined by reference
References
       Normative References
       Informative References
IDL Index
```

# § 1. Infrastructure

This specification depends on the Infra Standard. [INFRA]

Some of the terms used in this specification are defined in *Encoding, Selectors, Web IDL, XML*, and *Namespaces in XML*. [ENCODING] [SELECTORS4] [WEBIDL] [XML] [XML-NAMES]

The term context object is an alias for this.

Note

Usage of context object is deprecated in favor of this.

When extensions are needed, the DOM Standard can be updated accordingly, or a new standard can be written that hooks into the provided extensibility hooks for **applicable specifications**.

## 1.1. Trees

A **tree** is a finite hierarchical tree structure. In **tree order** is preorder, depth-first traversal of a <u>tree</u>.

An object that **participates** in a <u>tree</u> has a **parent**, which is either null or an object, and has **children**, which is an <u>ordered set</u> of objects. An object A whose <u>parent</u> is object B is a child of B.

The **root** of an object is itself, if its <u>parent</u> is null, or else it is the <u>root</u> of its <u>parent</u>. The <u>root</u> of a <u>tree</u> is any object <u>participating</u> in that <u>tree</u> whose <u>parent</u> is null.

An object A is called a **descendant** of an object B, if either A is a <u>child</u> of B or A is a <u>child</u> of an object C that is a <u>descendant</u> of B.

An **inclusive descendant** is an object or one of its <u>descendants</u>.

An object A is called an **ancestor** of an object B if and only if B is a descendant of A.

An **inclusive ancestor** is an object or one of its <u>ancestors</u>.

An object *A* is called a **sibling** of an object *B*, if and only if *B* and *A* share the same non-null <u>parent</u>.

An **inclusive sibling** is an object or one of its <u>siblings</u>.

An object A is **preceding** an object B if A and B are in the same <u>tree</u> and A comes before B in <u>tree order</u>.

An object A is **following** an object B if A and B are in the same  $\underline{\text{tree}}$  and A comes after B in tree order.

The **first child** of an object is its first child or null if it has no children.

The **last child** of an object is its last child or null if it has no children.

The **previous sibling** of an object is its first <u>preceding sibling</u> or null if it has no

preceding sibling.

The **next sibling** of an object is its first <u>following</u> <u>sibling</u> or null if it has no <u>following</u> sibling.

The **index** of an object is its number of <u>preceding siblings</u>, or 0 if it has none.

## 1.2. Ordered sets

The **ordered set parser** takes a string *input* and then runs these steps:

- 1. Let inputTokens be the result of splitting input on ASCII whitespace.
- 2. Let tokens be a new ordered set.
- 3. For each token in inputTokens, append token to tokens.
- 4. Return tokens.

The **ordered set serializer** takes a *set* and returns the <u>concatenation</u> of *set* using U+0020 SPACE.

## § 1.3. Selectors

To **scope-match a selectors string** *selectors* against a *node*, run these steps:

- 1. Let s be the result of parse a selector selectors. [SELECTORS4]
- 2. If s is failure, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 3. Return the result of <u>match a selector against a tree</u> with *s* and *node*'s <u>root</u> using <u>scoping root</u> <u>node</u>. [<u>SELECTORS4</u>].

Note

Support for namespaces within selectors is not planned and will not be added.

# 1.4. Namespaces

To **validate** a *qualifiedName*, <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if *qualifiedName* does not match the <u>QName</u> production.

To **validate and extract** a *namespace* and *qualifiedName*, run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. Validate qualifiedName.
- 3. Let *prefix* be null.
- 4. Let localName be qualifiedName.

- 5. If *qualifiedName* contains a ":" (U+003E), then split the string on it and set *prefix* to the part before and *localName* to the part after.
- 6. If *prefix* is non-null and *namespace* is null, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NamespaceError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 7. If *prefix* is "xml" and *namespace* is not the <u>XML namespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "NamespaceError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 8. If either *qualifiedName* or *prefix* is "xmlns" and *namespace* is not the <u>XMLNS</u> <u>namespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NamespaceError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 9. If namespace is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u> and neither qualifiedName nor prefix is "xmlns", then throw a "NamespaceError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 10. Return namespace, prefix, and localName.

## 2.1. Introduction to "DOM Events"

Throughout the web platform <u>events</u> are <u>dispatched</u> to objects to signal an occurrence, such as network activity or user interaction. These objects implement the <u>EventTarget</u> interface and can therefore add <u>event listeners</u> to observe <u>events</u> by calling <u>addEventListener()</u>:

```
obj.addEventListener("load", imgFetched)
function imgFetched(ev) {
   // great success
   ...
}
```

<u>Event listeners</u> can be removed by utilizing the <u>removeEventListener()</u> method, passing the same arguments.

Alternatively, <u>event listeners</u> can be removed by passing an <u>AbortSignal</u> to <u>addEventListener()</u> and calling <u>abort()</u> on the controller owning the signal.

<u>Events</u> are objects too and implement the <u>Event</u> interface (or a derived interface). In the example above *ev* is the <u>event</u>. *ev* is passed as an argument to the <u>event</u> <u>listener</u>'s <u>callback</u> (typically a JavaScript Function as shown above). <u>Event listeners</u> key off the <u>event</u>'s <u>type</u> attribute value ("load" in the above example). The <u>event</u>'s <u>target</u> attribute value returns the object to which the <u>event</u> was <u>dispatched</u> (*obj* above).

Although <u>events</u> are typically <u>dispatched</u> by the user agent as the result of user interaction or the completion of some task, applications can <u>dispatch</u> <u>events</u> themselves by using what are commonly known as synthetic events:

```
// add an appropriate event listener
obj.addEventListener("cat", function(e) { process(e.detail) })

// create and dispatch the event
var event = new CustomEvent("cat", {"detail":
    {"hazcheeseburger":true}})
obj.dispatchEvent(event)
```

Apart from signaling, <u>events</u> are sometimes also used to let an application control what happens next in an operation. For instance as part of form submission an <u>event</u> whose <u>type</u> attribute value is "submit" is <u>dispatched</u>. If this <u>event</u>'s <u>preventDefault()</u> method is invoked, form submission will be terminated.

Applications who wish to make use of this functionality through <u>events dispatched</u> by the application (synthetic events) can make use of the return value of the <u>dispatchEvent()</u> method:

```
if(obj.dispatchEvent(event)) {
   // event was not canceled, time for some magic
   ...
}
```

When an event is dispatched to an object that participates in a tree (e.g., an element),

it can reach <u>event listeners</u> on that object's <u>ancestors</u> too. Effectively, all the object's <u>inclusive ancestor event listeners</u> whose <u>capture</u> is true are invoked, in <u>tree order</u>. And then, if <u>event</u>'s <u>bubbles</u> is true, all the object's <u>inclusive ancestor event listeners</u> whose <u>capture</u> is false are invoked, now in reverse <u>tree order</u>.

Let's look at an example of how events work in a tree:

```
<!doctype html>
<html>
<head>
 <title>Boring example</title>
</head>
<body>
 Hello <span id=x>world</span>!
 <script>
  function test(e) {
    debug(e.target, e.currentTarget, e.eventPhase)
  }
  document.addEventListener("hey", test, {capture: true})
  document.body.addEventListener("hey", test)
  var ev = new Event("hey", {bubbles:true})
  document.getElementById("x").dispatchEvent(ev)
 </script>
</body>
</html>
```

The debug function will be invoked twice. Each time the <u>event</u>'s <u>target</u> attribute value will be the span <u>element</u>. The first time <u>currentTarget</u> attribute's value will be the <u>document</u>, the second time the body <u>element</u>. <u>eventPhase</u> attribute's value switches from <u>CAPTURING PHASE</u> to <u>BUBBLING PHASE</u>. If an <u>event listener</u> was registered for the span <u>element</u>, <u>eventPhase</u> attribute's value would have been <u>AT\_TARGET</u>.

# 2.2. Interface Event

```
[Exposed=(Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
interface Event {
  constructor(DOMString type, optional EventInit eventInitDict
  = {});

  readonly attribute DOMString type;
  readonly attribute EventTarget? target;
  readonly attribute EventTarget? srcElement; // legacy
  readonly attribute EventTarget? currentTarget;
  sequence<EventTarget> composedPath();

  const unsigned short NONE = 0;
  const unsigned short CAPTURING PHASE = 1;
  const unsigned short AT TARGET = 2;
  const unsigned short BUBBLING PHASE = 3;
  readonly attribute unsigned short eventPhase;
```

```
undefined stopPropagation();
           attribute boolean cancelBubble; // legacy alias of
.stopPropagation()
  undefined stopImmediatePropagation();
  readonly attribute boolean bubbles;
  readonly attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> <a href="cancelable">cancelable</a>;
           attribute boolean returnValue; // legacy
  undefined preventDefault();
  readonly attribute boolean defaultPrevented;
  readonly attribute boolean composed;
  [LegacyUnforgeable] readonly attribute boolean isTrusted;
  readonly attribute DOMHighResTimeStamp timeStamp;
  undefined initEvent(DOMString type, optional boolean bubbles
= false, optional boolean cancelable = false); // legacy
};
dictionary EventInit {
  boolean bubbles = false;
  boolean cancelable = false;
  boolean composed = false;
};
```

An <u>Event</u> object is simply named an **event**. It allows for signaling that something has occurred, e.g., that an image has completed downloading.

A potential event target is null or an EventTarget object.

An <u>event</u> has an associated **target** (a <u>potential event target</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is null.

An <u>event</u> has an associated **relatedTarget** (a <u>potential event target</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is null.

#### Note

Other specifications use <u>relatedTarget</u> to define a relatedTarget attribute. [UIEVENTS]

An <u>event</u> has an associated **touch target list** (a <u>list</u> of zero or more <u>potential event</u> targets). Unless stated otherwise it is the empty list.

#### Note

The <u>touch target list</u> is for the exclusive use of defining the <u>TouchEvent</u> interface and related interfaces. [<u>TOUCH-EVENTS</u>]

An <u>event</u> has an associated **path**. A <u>path</u> is a <u>list</u> of <u>structs</u>. Each <u>struct</u> consists of an **invocation target** (an <u>EventTarget</u> object), an **invocation-target-in-shadow-tree** (a boolean), a **shadow-adjusted target** (a <u>potential event target</u>), a **relatedTarget** (a <u>potential event target</u>), a **touch target list** (a <u>list</u> of <u>potential event targets</u>), a **root-of-closed-tree** (a boolean), and a **slot-in-closed-tree** (a boolean). A <u>path</u> is initially the empty list.

# event = new Event(type [, eventInitDict])

Returns a new *event* whose <u>type</u> attribute value is set to *type*. The *eventInitDict* argument allows for setting the <u>bubbles</u> and <u>cancelable</u> attributes via object members of the same name.

# event . type

Returns the type of event, e.g. "click", "hashchange", or "submit".

#### event . target

Returns the object to which event is dispatched (its target).

## event . currentTarget

Returns the object whose <u>event listener</u>'s <u>callback</u> is currently being invoked.

## event . composedPath()

Returns the <u>invocation target</u> objects of *event*'s <u>path</u> (objects on which listeners will be invoked), except for any <u>nodes</u> in <u>shadow trees</u> of which the <u>shadow root</u>'s <u>mode</u> is "closed" that are not reachable from *event*'s <u>currentTarget</u>.

# event . eventPhase

Returns the <u>event</u>'s phase, which is one of <u>NONE</u>, <u>CAPTURING PHASE</u>, <u>AT TARGET</u>, and <u>BUBBLING PHASE</u>.

# event . stopPropagation()

When <u>dispatched</u> in a <u>tree</u>, invoking this method prevents *event* from reaching any objects other than the current object.

# event . stopImmediatePropagation()

Invoking this method prevents *event* from reaching any registered <u>event</u> <u>listeners</u> after the current one finishes running and, when <u>dispatched</u> in a tree, also prevents *event* from reaching any other objects.

#### event . bubbles

Returns true or false depending on how *event* was initialized. True if *event* goes through its <u>target</u>'s <u>ancestors</u> in reverse <u>tree order</u>, and false otherwise.

#### event . cancelable

Returns true or false depending on how *event* was initialized. Its return value does not always carry meaning, but true can indicate that part of the operation during which *event* was <u>dispatched</u>, can be canceled by invoking the <u>preventDefault()</u> method.

### event . preventDefault()

If invoked when the <u>cancelable</u> attribute value is true, and while executing a listener for the <u>event</u> with <u>passive</u> set to false, signals to the operation that caused <u>event</u> to be <u>dispatched</u> that it needs to be canceled.

#### event . defaultPrevented

Returns true if <u>preventDefault()</u> was invoked successfully to indicate cancelation, and false otherwise.

## event . composed

Returns true or false depending on how *event* was initialized. True if *event* invokes listeners past a <u>ShadowRoot</u> <u>node</u> that is the <u>root</u> of its <u>target</u>, and false otherwise.

#### event . isTrusted

Returns true if *event* was <u>dispatched</u> by the user agent, and false otherwise.

#### event . timeStamp

Returns the *event*'s timestamp as the number of milliseconds measured relative to the <u>time origin</u>.

The **type** attribute must return the value it was initialized to. When an <u>event</u> is created the attribute must be initialized to the empty string.

The **target** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return <u>this</u>'s <u>target</u>.

The srcElement attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's target.

The **currentTarget** attribute must return the value it was initialized to. When an **event** is created the attribute must be initialized to null.

The composedPath() method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let composedPath be an empty list.
- 2. Let path be this's path.
- 3. If path <u>is empty</u>, then return composedPath.
- 4. Let *currentTarget* be this's currentTarget attribute value.
- 5. <u>Append</u> currentTarget to composedPath.
- 6. Let currentTargetIndex be 0.
- 7. Let currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel be 0.
- 8. Let index be path's  $\underline{\text{size}} 1$ .
- 9. While *index* is greater than or equal to 0:
  - 1. If path[index]'s <u>root-of-closed-tree</u> is true, then increase currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel by 1.
  - 2. If path[index]'s <u>invocation target</u> is *currentTarget*, then set *currentTargetIndex* to *index* and <u>break</u>.
  - 3. If path[index]'s <u>slot-in-closed-tree</u> is true, then decrease currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel by 1.
  - 4. Decrease index by 1.
- 10. Let *currentHiddenLevel* and *maxHiddenLevel* be *currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel*.
- 11. Set index to current TargetIndex 1.
- 12. While *index* is greater than or equal to 0:
  - 1. If path[index]'s root-of-closed-tree is true, then increase currentHiddenLevel by 1.
  - 2. If *currentHiddenLevel* is less than or equal to *maxHiddenLevel*, then prepend *path[index]*'s invocation target to *composedPath*.

- 3. If path[index]'s slot-in-closed-tree is true, then:
  - 1. Decrease currentHiddenLevel by 1.
  - 2. If *currentHiddenLevel* is less than *maxHiddenLevel*, then set *maxHiddenLevel* to *currentHiddenLevel*.
- 4. Decrease index by 1.
- 13. Set *currentHiddenLevel* and *maxHiddenLevel* to *currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel*.
- 14. Set index to currentTargetIndex + 1.
- 15. While index is less than path's size:
  - 1. If path[index]'s <u>slot-in-closed-tree</u> is true, then increase currentHiddenLevel by 1.
  - 2. If *currentHiddenLevel* is less than or equal to *maxHiddenLevel*, then <u>append</u> *path[index]*'s <u>invocation target</u> to *composedPath*.
  - 3. If path[index]'s root-of-closed-tree is true, then:
    - 1. Decrease *currentHiddenLevel* by 1.
    - 2. If *currentHiddenLevel* is less than *maxHiddenLevel*, then set *maxHiddenLevel* to *currentHiddenLevel*.
  - 4. Increase index by 1.
- 16. Return composedPath.

The **eventPhase** attribute must return the value it was initialized to, which must be one of the following:

#### **NONE** (numeric value 0)

**Events** not currently <u>dispatched</u> are in this phase.

## **CAPTURING PHASE (numeric value 1)**

When an <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u> to an object that <u>participates</u> in a <u>tree</u> it will be in this phase before it reaches its <u>target</u>.

## **AT\_TARGET** (numeric value 2)

When an event is dispatched it will be in this phase on its target.

## **BUBBLING PHASE (numeric value 3)**

When an <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u> to an object that <u>participates</u> in a <u>tree</u> it will be in this phase after it reaches its <u>target</u>.

Initially the attribute must be initialized to NONE.

Each event has the following associated flags that are all initially unset:

- stop propagation flag
- stop immediate propagation flag
- canceled flag
- in passive listener flag

- composed flag
- initialized flag
- dispatch flag

The **stopPropagation()** method, when invoked, must set this's stop propagation flag.

The **cancelBubble** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return true if <u>this</u>'s <u>stop</u> <u>propagation flag</u> is set, and false otherwise.

The <u>cancelBubble</u> attribute's setter, when invoked, must set <u>this</u>'s <u>stop propagation</u> <u>flag</u> if the given value is true, and do nothing otherwise.

The **stopImmediatePropagation()** method, when invoked, must set <u>this</u>'s <u>stop propagation flag</u> and <u>this</u>'s <u>stop immediate propagation flag</u>.

The **bubbles** and **cancelable** attributes must return the values they were initialized to.

To **set the canceled flag**, given an <u>event</u> event, if event's <u>cancelable</u> attribute value is true and event's <u>in passive listener flag</u> is unset, then set event's <u>canceled flag</u>, and do nothing otherwise.

The **returnValue** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return false if <u>this</u>'s <u>canceled</u> <u>flag</u> is set, and true otherwise.

The <u>returnValue</u> attribute's setter, when invoked, must <u>set the canceled flag</u> with <u>this</u> if the given value is false, and do nothing otherwise.

The preventDefault() method, when invoked, must set the canceled flag with this.

#### Note

There are scenarios where invoking <u>preventDefault()</u> has no effect. User agents are encouraged to log the precise cause in a developer console, to aid debugging.

The **defaultPrevented** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return true if <u>this</u>'s <u>canceled flag</u> is set, and false otherwise.

The **composed** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return true if <u>this</u>'s <u>composed</u> <u>flag</u> is set, and false otherwise.

The **isTrusted** attribute must return the value it was initialized to. When an <u>event</u> is created the attribute must be initialized to false.

#### Note

<u>isTrusted</u> is a convenience that indicates whether an <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u> by the user agent (as opposed to using <u>dispatchEvent()</u>). The sole legacy exception is <u>click()</u>, which causes the user agent to dispatch an <u>event</u> whose <u>isTrusted</u> attribute is initialized to false.

The **timeStamp** attribute must return the value it was initialized to.

To **initialize** an *event*, with *type*, *bubbles*, and *cancelable*, run these steps:

- 1. Set event's initialized flag.
- 2. Unset *event*'s <u>stop propagation flag</u>, <u>stop immediate propagation flag</u>, and <u>canceled flag</u>.
- 3. Set event's isTrusted attribute to false.
- 4. Set event's target to null.
- 5. Set event's type attribute to type.
- 6. Set event's bubbles attribute to bubbles.
- 7. Set event's cancelable attribute to cancelable.

The **initEvent**(*type*, *bubbles*, *cancelable*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this's dispatch flag is set, then return.
- 2. Initialize this with type, bubbles, and cancelable.

#### Note

<u>initEvent()</u> is redundant with <u>event</u> constructors and incapable of setting <u>composed</u>. It has to be supported for legacy content.

# 2.3. Legacy extensions to the <u>Window</u> interface

```
partial interface Window {
    [Replaceable] readonly attribute (Event or undefined) event;
// legacy
};
```

Each <u>Window</u> object has an associated **current event** (undefined or an <u>Event</u> object). Unless stated otherwise it is undefined.

The event attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's current event.

# Note

Web developers are strongly encouraged to instead rely on the <u>Event</u> object passed to event listeners, as that will result in more portable code. This attribute is not available in workers or worklets, and is inaccurate for events dispatched in shadow trees.

# § 2.4. Interface <u>CustomEvent</u>

```
[Exposed=(Window,Worker)]
interface CustomEvent : Event {
  constructor(DOMString type, optional CustomEventInit
  eventInitDict = {});
```

```
readonly attribute any detail;

undefined initCustomEvent(DOMString type, optional boolean
bubbles = false, optional boolean cancelable = false, optional
any detail = null); // legacy
};

dictionary CustomEventInit : EventInit {
any detail = null;
};
```

Events using the CustomEvent interface can be used to carry custom data.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
event = new CustomEvent(type [, eventInitDict])
```

Works analogously to the constructor for <a href="Event">Event</a> except that the eventInitDict argument now allows for setting the <a href="detail">detail</a> attribute too.

## event . detail

Returns any custom data *event* was created with. Typically used for synthetic events.

The **detail** attribute must return the value it was initialized to.

The initCustomEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable, detail) method must, when invoked, run these steps:

- 1. If this's dispatch flag is set, then return.
- 2. <u>Initialize this</u> with *type*, *bubbles*, and *cancelable*.
- 3. Set this's detail attribute to detail.

# § 2.5. Constructing events

<u>Specifications</u> may define **event constructing steps** for all or some <u>events</u>. The algorithm is passed an *event* as indicated in the <u>inner event creation steps</u>.

#### Note

This construct can be used by <a href="Event"><u>Event</u></a> subclasses that have a more complex structure than a simple 1:1 mapping between their initializing dictionary members and IDL attributes.

When a **constructor** of the <u>Event</u> interface, or of an interface that inherits from the <u>Event</u> interface, is invoked, these steps must be run, given the arguments *type* and *eventInitDict*:

- 1. Let *event* be the result of running the <u>inner event creation steps</u> with this interface, null, now, and *eventInitDict*.
- 2. Initialize event's type attribute to type.

3. Return event.

To **create an event** using *eventInterface*, which must be either <u>Event</u> or an interface that inherits from it, and optionally given a <u>Realm</u> realm, run these steps:

- 1. If realm is not given, then set it to null.
- 2. Let *dictionary* be the result of <u>converting</u> the JavaScript value undefined to the dictionary type accepted by *eventInterface*'s constructor. (This dictionary type will either be <u>EventInit</u> or a dictionary that inherits from it.)

This does not work if members are required; see whatwg/dom#600.

- 3. Let *event* be the result of running the <u>inner event creation steps</u> with *eventInterface*, *realm*, the time of the occurrence that the event is signaling, and *dictionary*.
- Example

In macOS the time of the occurrence for input actions is available via the timestamp property of NSEvent objects.

- 4. Initialize event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to true.
- 5. Return event.

#### Note

<u>Create an event</u> is meant to be used by other specifications which need to separately <u>create</u> and <u>dispatch</u> events, instead of simply <u>firing</u> them. It ensures the event's attributes are initialized to the correct defaults.

The **inner event creation steps**, given an *interface*, *realm*, *time*, and *dictionary*, are as follows:

1. Let *event* be the result of creating a new object using *eventInterface*. If *realm* is non-null, then use that Realm; otherwise, use the default behavior defined in Web IDL.

As of the time of this writing Web IDL does not yet define any default behavior; see <a href="heycam/webidl#135">heycam/webidl#135</a>.

- 2. Set event's initialized flag.
- 3. Initialize event's <u>timeStamp</u> attribute to a <u>DOMHighResTimeStamp</u> representing the high resolution time from the <u>time origin</u> to *time*.

#### **∆Warnin**α!

User agents should set a minimum resolution of event's <u>timeStamp</u> attribute to 5 microseconds following the existing <u>clock resolution</u> recommendation. [HR-TIME]

- 4. For each member → value in dictionary, if event has an attribute whose identifier is member, then initialize that attribute to value.
- 5. Run the event constructing steps with event.
- 6. Return event.

# 2.6. Defining event interfaces

In general, when defining a new interface that inherits from <u>Event</u> please always ask feedback from the WHATWG or the W3C WebApps WG community.

The <u>CustomEvent</u> interface can be used as starting point. However, do not introduce any init\*Event() methods as they are redundant with constructors. Interfaces that inherit from the <u>Event</u> interface that have such a method only have it for historical reasons.

# 2.7. Interface EventTarget

```
[Exposed=(Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
interface EventTarget {
  constructor();
  undefined addEventListener(DOMString type, EventListener?
callback, optional (AddEventListenerOptions or boolean)
options = {});
  undefined removeEventListener(DOMString type, EventListener?
callback, optional (EventListenerOptions or boolean) options =
  boolean dispatchEvent(Event event);
};
callback interface EventListener {
  undefined handleEvent(Event event);
};
dictionary EventListenerOptions {
  boolean capture = false;
};
dictionary AddEventListenerOptions : EventListenerOptions {
  boolean passive = false;
  boolean once = false;
  AbortSignal signal;
};
```

An <u>EventTarget</u> object represents a target to which an <u>event</u> can be <u>dispatched</u> when something has occurred.

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object has an associated **event listener list** (a <u>list</u> of zero or more <u>event listeners</u>). It is initially the empty list.

An **event listener** can be used to observe a specific <u>event</u> and consists of:

```
• type (a string)
```

- callback (null or an <a href="EventListener">EventListener</a> object)
- capture (a boolean, initially false)
- passive (a boolean, initially false)
- once (a boolean, initially false)
- **signal** (null or an <u>AbortSignal</u> object)
- removed (a boolean for bookkeeping purposes, initially false)

Although <u>callback</u> is an <u>EventListener</u> object, an <u>event listener</u> is a broader concept as can be seen above.

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object also has an associated **get the parent** algorithm, which takes an <u>event</u> <u>event</u>, and returns an <u>EventTarget</u> object. Unless specified otherwise it returns null.

#### Note

Nodes, shadow roots, and documents override the get the parent algorithm.

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object can have an associated **activation behavior** algorithm. The <u>activation behavior</u> algorithm is passed an <u>event</u>, as indicated in the <u>dispatch</u> algorithm.

#### Note

This exists because user agents perform certain actions for certain <a href="EventTarget">EventTarget</a>
objects, e.g., the <a href="area">area</a> element, in response to synthetic <a href="MouseEvent">MouseEvent</a> events
whose <a href="type">type</a> attribute is click. Web compatibility prevented it from being removed and it is now the enshrined way of defining an activation of something. <a href="[HTML]">[HTML]</a>

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object that has <u>activation behavior</u>, can additionally have both (not either) a **legacy-pre-activation behavior** algorithm and a **legacy-canceled-activation behavior** algorithm.

#### Note

These algorithms only exist for checkbox and radio <u>input</u> elements and are not to be used for anything else. [HTML]

For web developers (non-normative)

#### target = new EventTarget();

Creates a new <u>EventTarget</u> object, which can be used by developers to dispatch and listen for events.

## target . addEventListener(type, callback [, options])

Appends an <u>event listener</u> for <u>events</u> whose <u>type</u> attribute value is <u>type</u>. The <u>callback</u> argument sets the <u>callback</u> that will be invoked when the <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u>.

The *options* argument sets listener-specific options. For compatibility this can be a boolean, in which case the method behaves exactly as if the value was specified as *options*'s <u>capture</u>.

When set to true, *options*'s <u>capture</u> prevents <u>callback</u> from being invoked when the <u>event</u>'s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute value is <u>BUBBLING\_PHASE</u>. When false (or not present), <u>callback</u> will not be invoked when <u>event</u>'s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute value is <u>CAPTURING\_PHASE</u>. Either way, <u>callback</u> will be invoked if <u>event</u>'s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute value is <u>AT\_TARGET</u>.

When set to true, *options*'s <u>passive</u> indicates that the <u>callback</u> will not cancel the event by invoking <u>preventDefault()</u>. This is used to enable performance optimizations described in § <u>2.8 Observing event listeners</u>.

When set to true, *options*'s <u>once</u> indicates that the <u>callback</u> will only be invoked once after which the event listener will be removed.

If an <u>AbortSignal</u> is passed for *options*'s <u>signal</u>, then the event listener will be removed when signal is aborted.

The <u>event listener</u> is appended to <u>target</u>'s <u>event listener list</u> and is not appended if it has the same <u>type</u>, <u>callback</u>, and <u>capture</u>.

## target . removeEventListener(type, callback [, options])

Removes the <u>event listener</u> in *target*'s <u>event listener list</u> with the same *type*, *callback*, and *options*.

## target . dispatchEvent(event)

<u>Dispatches</u> a synthetic event event to target and returns true if either event's <u>cancelable</u> attribute value is false or its <u>preventDefault()</u> method was not invoked, and false otherwise.

## To **flatten** options, run these steps:

- 1. If *options* is a boolean, then return *options*.
- 2. Return options["capture"].

## To **flatten more** *options*, run these steps:

- 1. Let capture be the result of <u>flattening</u> options.
- 2. Let once and passive be false.
- 3. Let signal be null.
- 4. If *options* is a dictionary, then:
  - 1. Set passive to options["passive"] and once to options["once"].
  - 2. If options["signal"] exists, then set signal to options["signal"].
- 5. Return capture, passive, once, and signal.

The **EventTarget()** constructor, when invoked, must return a new **EventTarget**.

#### Note

Because of the defaults stated elsewhere, the returned <a href="EventTarget">EventTarget</a>'s <a href="get the">get the</a>
<a href="parent">parent</a> algorithm will return null, and it will have no <a href="activation behavior">activation behavior</a>, <a href="mailto:legacy-canceled-activation behavior">legacy-canceled-activation behavior</a>.

#### Note

In the future we could allow custom <u>get the parent</u> algorithms. Let us know if this would be useful for your programs. For now, all author-created <u>EventTarget</u>s do not participate in a tree structure.

To **add an event listener**, given an <u>EventTarget</u> object *eventTarget* and an <u>event</u> listener listener, run these steps:

If eventTarget is a <u>ServiceWorkerGlobalScope</u> object, its <u>service worker</u>'s <u>script resource</u>'s <u>has ever been evaluated flag</u> is set, and <u>listener</u>'s <u>type</u> matches the <u>type</u> attribute value of any of the <u>service worker events</u>, then <u>report a warning to the console</u> that this might not give the expected results. [<u>SERVICE-WORKERS</u>]

- 2. If <u>signal</u> is not null and its <u>aborted flag</u> is set, then return.
- 3. If *listener*'s <u>callback</u> is null, then return.
- 4. If eventTarget's event listener list does not contain an event listener whose <a href="type">type</a> is listener's <a href="type">type</a>, <a href="callback">callback</a>, and <a href="callback">capture</a> is listener's <a href="callback">callback</a>, and <a href="callback">capture</a> is listener's <a href="callback">capture</a>, then append listener to eventTarget's event listener list.
- 5. If listener's signal is not null, then add the following abort steps to it:
  - 1. Remove an event listener with eventTarget and listener.

#### Note

The <u>add an event listener</u> concept exists to ensure <u>event handlers</u> use the same code path. [HTML]

The addEventListener(type, callback, options) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *capture*, *passive*, and *once* be the result of <u>flattening more</u> options.
- 2. <u>Add an event listener</u> with <u>this</u> and an <u>event listener</u> whose <u>type</u> is *type*, <u>callback</u> is *callback*, <u>capture</u> is *capture*, <u>passive</u> is *passive*, <u>once</u> is *once*, and signal is *signal*.

To **remove an event listener**, given an <u>EventTarget</u> object *eventTarget* and an <u>event listener</u>, run these steps:

- If eventTarget is a <u>ServiceWorkerGlobalScope</u> object and its <u>service worker</u>'s <u>set of event types to handle</u> contains type, then <u>report a warning to the console</u> that this might not give the expected results. [<u>SERVICE-WORKERS</u>]
- 2. Set *listener*'s <u>removed</u> to true and <u>remove</u> *listener* from *eventTarget*'s <u>event</u> listener list.

#### Note

HTML needs this to define event handlers. [HTML]

To **remove all event listeners**, given an <u>EventTarget</u> object *eventTarget*, <u>for each</u> *listener* of *eventTarget*'s <u>event listener list</u>, <u>remove an event listener</u> with *eventTarget* and *listener*.

# Note

HTML needs this to define document.open(). [HTML]

The **removeEventListener**(*type*, *callback*, *options*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *capture* be the result of flattening *options*.
- 2. If <u>this</u>'s <u>event listener list contains</u> an <u>event listener</u> whose <u>type</u> is *type*, <u>callback</u> is <u>callback</u>, and <u>capture</u> is <u>capture</u>, then <u>remove an event listener</u> with <u>this</u> and that <u>event listener</u>.

## Note

The event listener list will not contain multiple event listeners with equal type,

The dispatchEvent(event) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If event's <u>dispatch flag</u> is set, or if its <u>initialized flag</u> is not set, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidStateError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Initialize event's isTrusted attribute to false.
- 3. Return the result of dispatching event to this.

# 2.8. Observing event listeners

In general, developers do not expect the presence of an <u>event listener</u> to be observable. The impact of an <u>event listener</u> is determined by its <u>callback</u>. That is, a developer adding a no-op <u>event listener</u> would not expect it to have any side effects.

Unfortunately, some event APIs have been designed such that implementing them efficiently requires observing <u>event listeners</u>. This can make the presence of listeners observable in that even empty listeners can have a dramatic performance impact on the behavior of the application. For example, touch and wheel events which can be used to block asynchronous scrolling. In some cases this problem can be mitigated by specifying the event to be <u>cancelable</u> only when there is at least one non-<u>passive</u> listener. For example, non-<u>passive</u> TouchEvent listeners must block scrolling, but if all listeners are <u>passive</u> then scrolling can be allowed to start <u>in parallel</u> by making the <u>TouchEvent</u> uncancelable (so that calls to <u>preventDefault()</u> are ignored). So code dispatching an event is able to observe the absence of non-<u>passive</u> listeners, and use that to clear the <u>cancelable</u> property of the event being dispatched.

Ideally, any new event APIs are defined such that they do not need this property (use <a href="mailto:public-script-coord@w3.org">public-script-coord@w3.org</a> for discussion).

# § 2.9. Dispatching events

To **dispatch** an event to a target, with an optional legacy target override flag and an optional legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag, run these steps:

- 1. Set event's dispatch flag.
- 2. Let *targetOverride* be *target*, if *legacy target override flag* is not given, and *target*'s <u>associated Document</u> otherwise. [HTML]

#### Note

legacy target override flag is only used by HTML and only when target is a Window object.

- 3. Let activationTarget be null.
- 4. Let *relatedTarget* be the result of <u>retargeting</u> *event*'s <u>relatedTarget</u> against *target*.

- 5. If target is not relatedTarget or target is event's relatedTarget, then:
  - 1. Let touchTargets be a new list.
  - 2. <u>For each</u> *touchTarget* of *event's* <u>touch target list</u>, <u>append</u> the result of <u>retargeting</u> *touchTarget* against *target* to *touchTargets*.
  - 3. <u>Append to an event path</u> with event, target, targetOverride, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and false.
  - 4. Let *isActivationEvent* be true, if *event* is a <u>MouseEvent</u> object and *event*'s <u>type</u> attribute is "click", and false otherwise.
  - 5. If *isActivationEvent* is true and *target* has <u>activation behavior</u>, then set *activationTarget* to *target*.
  - 6. Let *slottable* be *target*, if *target* is a <u>slottable</u> and is <u>assigned</u>, and null otherwise.
  - 7. Let slot-in-closed-tree be false.
  - 8. Let parent be the result of invoking target's get the parent with event.
  - 9. While *parent* is non-null:
    - 1. If slottable is non-null:
      - 1. Assert: parent is a slot.
      - 2. Set slottable to null.
      - 3. If parent's <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u> whose <u>mode</u> is "closed", then set *slot-in-closed-tree* to true.
    - 2. If *parent* is a <u>slottable</u> and is <u>assigned</u>, then set *slottable* to *parent*.
    - 3. Let *relatedTarget* be the result of <u>retargeting</u> *event's* <u>relatedTarget</u> against *parent*.
    - 4. Let touchTargets be a new list.
    - For each touchTarget of event's touch target list, append the result of retargeting touchTarget against parent to touchTargets.
    - 6. If *parent* is a <u>Window</u> object, or *parent* is a <u>node</u> and *target*'s root is a shadow-including inclusive ancestor of *parent*, then:
      - If isActivationEvent is true, event's <u>bubbles</u> attribute is true, activationTarget is null, and parent has <u>activation</u> <u>behavior</u>, then set activationTarget to parent.
      - 2. <u>Append to an event path</u> with event, parent, null, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and slot-in-closed-tree.
    - 7. Otherwise, if parent is relatedTarget, then set parent to null.
    - 8. Otherwise, set *target* to *parent* and then:
      - 1. If *isActivationEvent* is true, *activationTarget* is null, and *target* has <u>activation behavior</u>, then set *activationTarget* to *target*.

- 2. <u>Append to an event path</u> with event, parent, target, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and slot-in-closed-tree.
- 9. If *parent* is non-null, then set *parent* to the result of invoking *parent*'s get the parent with *event*.
- 10. Set slot-in-closed-tree to false.
- 10. Let *clearTargetsStruct* be the last struct in *event*'s <u>path</u> whose <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is non-null.
- 11. Let *clearTargets* be true if *clearTargetsStruct*'s <u>shadow-adjusted target</u>, *clearTargetsStruct*'s <u>relatedTarget</u>, or an <u>EventTarget</u> object in *clearTargetsStruct*'s <u>touch target list</u> is a <u>node</u> and its <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow</u> <u>root</u>, and false otherwise.
- 12. If activationTarget is non-null and activationTarget has <u>legacy-pre-activation</u> behavior, then run activationTarget's <u>legacy-pre-activation</u> behavior.
- 13. For each struct in event's path, in reverse order:
  - 1. If *struct*'s <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is non-null, then set *event*'s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute to <u>AT\_TARGET</u>.
  - 2. Otherwise, set *event*'s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute to <u>CAPTURING PHASE</u>.
  - 3. <u>Invoke</u> with *struct*, *event*, "capturing", and *legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag* if given.
- 14. For each struct in event's path:
  - 1. If *struct*'s <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is non-null, then set *event*'s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute to AT TARGET.
  - 2. Otherwise:
    - 1. If event's <u>bubbles</u> attribute is false, then <u>continue</u>.
    - 2. Set event's eventPhase attribute to BUBBLING PHASE.
  - 3. <u>Invoke</u> with *struct*, *event*, "bubbling", and *legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag* if given.
- 6. Set event's eventPhase attribute to NONE.
- 7. Set event's <u>currentTarget</u> attribute to null.
- 8. Set event's path to the empty list.
- 9. Unset *event*'s <u>dispatch flag</u>, <u>stop propagation flag</u>, and <u>stop immediate</u> propagation flag.
- 10. If clearTargets, then:
  - 1. Set event's target to null.
  - 2. Set event's relatedTarget to null.
  - 3. Set event's touch target list to the empty list.
- 11. If activationTarget is non-null, then:

- 1. If event's <u>canceled flag</u> is unset, then run activationTarget's <u>activation</u> behavior with event.
- 2. Otherwise, if *activationTarget* has <u>legacy-canceled-activation behavior</u>, then run *activationTarget*'s <u>legacy-canceled-activation behavior</u>.
- 12. Return false if event's canceled flag is set, and true otherwise.

To **append to an event path**, given an *event*, *invocationTarget*, *shadowAdjustedTarget*, *relatedTarget*, *touchTargets*, and a *slot-in-closed-tree*, run these steps:

- 1. Let invocationTargetInShadowTree be false.
- 2. If *invocationTarget* is a <u>node</u> and its <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, then set *invocationTargetInShadowTree* to true.
- 3. Let root-of-closed-tree be false.
- 4. If *invocationTarget* is a <u>shadow root</u> whose <u>mode</u> is "closed", then set *root-of-closed-tree* to true.
- 5. <u>Append</u> a new <u>struct</u> to event's <u>path</u> whose <u>invocation target</u> is invocationTarget, <u>invocation-target-in-shadow-tree</u> is invocationTargetInShadowTree, <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is shadowAdjustedTarget, <u>relatedTarget</u> is relatedTarget, <u>touch target list</u> is touchTargets, <u>root-of-closed-tree</u> is root-of-closed-tree, and <u>slot-in-closed-tree</u> is slot-in-closed-tree.

To **invoke**, given a *struct*, *event*, *phase*, and an optional *legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag*, run these steps:

- 1. Set *event*'s <u>target</u> to the <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> of the last struct in *event*'s <u>path</u>, that is either *struct* or preceding *struct*, whose <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is non-null.
- 2. Set event's <u>relatedTarget</u> to <u>struct</u>'s <u>relatedTarget</u>.
- 3. Set event's touch target list to struct's touch target list.
- 4. If event's stop propagation flag is set, then return.
- 5. Initialize event's currentTarget attribute to struct's invocation target.
- 6. Let *listeners* be a <u>clone</u> of *event*'s <u>currentTarget</u> attribute value's <u>event listener list</u>.

#### Note

This avoids <u>event listeners</u> added after this point from being run. Note that removal still has an effect due to the <u>removed</u> field.

- 7. Let *invocationTargetInShadowTree* be *struct*'s <u>invocation-target-in-shadow-tree</u>.
- 8. Let *found* be the result of running <u>inner invoke</u> with *event*, *listeners*, *phase*, *invocationTargetInShadowTree*, and *legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag* if given.
- 9. If *found* is false and *event*'s <u>isTrusted</u> attribute is true, then:
  - 1. Let *originalEventType* be *event*'s <u>type</u> attribute value.

2. If event's <u>type</u> attribute value is a match for any of the strings in the first column in the following table, set event's <u>type</u> attribute value to the string in the second column on the same row as the matching string, and return otherwise.

Event type	Legacy event type
"animationend"	"webkitAnimationEnd"
"animationiteration"	"webkitAnimationIteration"
"animationstart"	"webkitAnimationStart"
"transitionend"	"webkitTransitionEnd"

- 3. <u>Inner invoke</u> with event, listeners, phase, invocationTargetInShadowTree, and legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.
- 4. Set event's type attribute value to originalEventType.

To **inner invoke**, given an *event*, *listeners*, *phase*, *invocationTargetInShadowTree*, and an optional *legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag*, run these steps:

- 1. Let found be false.
- 2. <u>For each</u> *listener* in *listeners*, whose <u>removed</u> is false:
  - 1. If event's type attribute value is not listener's type, then continue.
  - 2. Set found to true.
  - 3. If phase is "capturing" and listener's capture is false, then continue.
  - 4. If phase is "bubbling" and listener's capture is true, then continue.
  - 5. If *listener*'s <u>once</u> is true, then <u>remove</u> *listener* from *event*'s <u>currentTarget</u> attribute value's <u>event listener list</u>.
  - 6. Let *global* be *listener* <u>callback</u>'s <u>associated Realm</u>'s <u>global object</u>.
  - 7. Let *currentEvent* be undefined.
  - 8. If *global* is a Window object, then:
    - 1. Set currentEvent to global's current event.
    - 2. If *invocationTargetInShadowTree* is false, then set *global*'s current event to event.
  - 9. If listener's passive is true, then set event's in passive listener flag.
  - 10. <u>Call a user object's operation</u> with *listener*'s <u>callback</u>, "handleEvent", « <u>event</u> », and <u>event</u>'s <u>currentTarget</u> attribute value. If this throws an exception, then:
    - 1. Report the exception.
    - 2. Set legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.

#### Note

The legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag is only used by Indexed Database API. [INDEXEDDB]

11. Unset event's in passive listener flag.

- 12. If *global* is a <u>Window</u> object, then set *global*'s <u>current event</u> to *currentEvent*.
- 13. If event's stop immediate propagation flag is set, then return found.
- 3. Return found.

# 2.10. Firing events

To **fire an event** named *e* at *target*, optionally using an *eventConstructor*, with a description of how IDL attributes are to be initialized, and a *legacy target override flag*, run these steps:

- 1. If eventConstructor is not given, then let eventConstructor be Event.
- 2. Let *event* be the result of <u>creating an event</u> given *eventConstructor*, in the relevant Realm of *target*.
- 3. Initialize event's type attribute to e.
- 4. Initialize any other IDL attributes of *event* as described in the invocation of this algorithm.

Note

This also allows for the <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to be set to false.

5. Return the result of <u>dispatching</u> event at target, with legacy target override flag set if set.

## Note

Fire in the context of DOM is short for <u>creating</u>, initializing, and <u>dispatching</u> an <u>event</u>. <u>Fire an event</u> makes that process easier to write down.

# Example

If the <u>event</u> needs its <u>bubbles</u> or <u>cancelable</u> attribute initialized, one could write "<u>fire an event</u> named submit at *target* with its <u>cancelable</u> attribute initialized to true".

Or, when a custom constructor is needed, "fire an event named click at target using MouseEvent with its detail attribute initialized to 1".

Occasionally the return value is important:

- 1. Let doAction be the result of firing an event named like at target.
- 2. If doAction is true, then ...

## **2.11. Action versus occurrence**

An event signifies an occurrence, not an action. Phrased differently, it represents a

notification from an algorithm and can be used to influence the future course of that algorithm (e.g., through invoking <u>preventDefault()</u>). <u>Events</u> must not be used as actions or initiators that cause some algorithm to start running. That is not what they are for.

## Note

This is called out here specifically because previous iterations of the DOM had a concept of "default actions" associated with <u>events</u> that gave folks all the wrong ideas. <u>Events</u> do not represent or cause actions, they can only be used to influence an ongoing one.

# 3. Aborting ongoing activities

Though promises do not have a built-in aborting mechanism, many APIs using them require abort semantics. <a href="AbortController">AbortController</a> is meant to support these requirements by providing an <a href="abort">abort()</a> method that toggles the state of a corresponding <a href="AbortSignal">AbortSignal</a> object. The API which wishes to support aborting can accept an <a href="AbortSignal">AbortSignal</a> object, and use its state to determine how to proceed.

APIs that rely upon <u>AbortController</u> are encouraged to respond to <u>abort()</u> by rejecting any unsettled promise with a new "<u>AbortError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

# Example

A hypothetical doAmazingness({ ... }) method could accept an <a href="MoortSignal">AbortSignal</a> object in order to support aborting as follows:

```
const controller = new AbortController();
const signal = controller.signal;

startSpinner();

doAmazingness({ ..., signal })
   .then(result => ...)
   .catch(err => {
    if (err.name == 'AbortError') return;
    showUserErrorMessage();
   })
   .then(() => stopSpinner());

// ...

controller.abort();
```

doAmazingness could be implemented as follows:

```
function doAmazingness({signal}) {
   if (signal.aborted) {
      return Promise.reject(new DOMException('Aborted',
'AbortError'));
   }

   return new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
      // Begin doing amazingness, and call resolve(result)
when done.
      // But also, watch for signals:
      signal.addEventListener('abort', () => {
            // Stop doing amazingness, and:
            reject(new DOMException('Aborted', 'AbortError'));
      });
    });
}
```

APIs that require more granular control could extend both <u>AbortController</u> and <u>AbortSignal</u> objects according to their needs.

# 3.1. Interface AbortController

```
[Exposed=(Window,Worker)]
interface AbortController {
  constructor();

[SameObject] readonly attribute AbortSignal signal;

undefined abort();
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
controller = new AbortController()
```

Returns a new *controller* whose <u>signal</u> is set to a newly created <u>AbortSignal</u> object.

```
controller . <u>signal</u>
```

Returns the AbortSignal object associated with this object.

```
controller . abort()
```

Invoking this method will set this object's <u>AbortSignal</u>'s <u>aborted flag</u> and signal to any observers that the associated activity is to be aborted.

An AbortController object has an associated signal (an AbortSignal object).

The **new AbortController()** constructor steps are:

- 1. Let signal be a new AbortSignal object.
- 2. Set this's signal to signal.

The **signal** getter steps are to return this's signal.

The abort () method steps are to signal abort on this's signal.

# § 3.2. Interface AbortSignal

```
[Exposed=(Window, Worker)]
interface AbortSignal : EventTarget {
   [NewObject] static AbortSignal abort();

   readonly attribute boolean aborted;

   attribute EventHandler onabort;
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
AbortSignal . <u>abort()</u>
```

Returns an AbortSignal instance whose aborted flag is set.

```
signal . aborted
```

Returns true if this AbortSignal's AbortController has signaled to abort,

and false otherwise.

An <u>AbortSignal</u> object has an associated **aborted flag**. It is unset unless specified otherwise.

An <u>AbortSignal</u> object has associated **abort algorithms**, which is a <u>set</u> of algorithms which are to be executed when its <u>aborted flag</u> is set. Unless specified otherwise, its value is the empty set.

To **add** an algorithm to an AbortSignal object signal, run these steps:

- 1. If signal's aborted flag is set, then return.
- 2. Append algorithm to signal's abort algorithms.

To **remove** an algorithm from an <u>AbortSignal</u> signal, <u>remove</u> algorithm from signal's <u>abort algorithms</u>.

#### Note

The <u>abort algorithms</u> enable APIs with complex requirements to react in a reasonable way to <u>abort()</u>. For example, a given API's <u>aborted flag</u> might need to be propagated to a cross-thread environment, such as a service worker.

The static abort() method steps are:

- 1. Let signal be a new AbortSignal object.
- 2. Set signal's aborted flag.
- 3. Return signal.

The **aborted** getter steps are to return true if this's aborted flag is set; otherwise false.

The **onabort** attribute is an <u>event handler IDL attribute</u> for the **onabort** <u>event handler</u>, whose event handler event type is <u>abort</u>.

#### Note

Changes to an AbortSignal object represent the wishes of the corresponding AbortController object, but an API observing the AbortSignal object can chose to ignore them. For instance, if the operation has already completed.

To **signal abort**, given a <u>AbortSignal</u> object *signal*, run these steps:

- 1. If signal's aborted flag is set, then return.
- 2. Set signal's aborted flag.
- 3. For each algorithm in signal's abort algorithms: run algorithm.
- 4. Empty signal's abort algorithms.
- 5. Fire an event named abort at signal.

A followingSignal (an AbortSignal) is made to **follow** a parentSignal (an AbortSignal) by running these steps:

- 1. If followingSignal's aborted flag is set, then return.
- 2. If parentSignal's aborted flag is set, then signal abort on followingSignal.
- 3. Otherwise, add the following abort steps to parentSignal:
  - 1. Signal abort on followingSignal.

# § 3.3. Using AbortController and AbortSignal objects in APIs

Any web platform API using promises to represent operations that can be aborted must adhere to the following:

- Accept AbortSignal objects through a signal dictionary member.
- Convey that the operation got aborted by rejecting the promise with an "AbortError" DOMException.
- Reject immediately if the AbortSignal's aborted flag is already set, otherwise:
- Use the <u>abort algorithms</u> mechanism to observe changes to the <u>AbortSignal</u> object and do so in a manner that does not lead to clashes with other observers.

# Example

The steps for a promise-returning method doAmazingness(options) could be as follows:

- 1. Let p be a new promise.
- 2. If options' signal member is present, then:
  - 1. If *options*' signal's <u>aborted flag</u> is set, then <u>reject</u> *p* with an "<u>AbortError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> and return *p*.
  - 2. Add the following abort steps to options' signal:
    - 1. Stop doing amazing things.
    - 2. Reject p with an "AbortError" DOMException.
- 3. Run these steps in parallel:
  - 1. Let amazingResult be the result of doing some amazing things.
  - 2. Resolve p with amazingResult.
- 4. Return p.

APIs not using promises should still adhere to the above as much as possible.

# § 4. Nodes

## § 4.1. Introduction to "The DOM"

In its original sense, "The DOM" is an API for accessing and manipulating documents (in particular, HTML and XML documents). In this specification, the term "document" is used for any markup-based resource, ranging from short static documents to long essays or reports with rich multimedia, as well as to fully-fledged interactive applications.

Each such document is represented as a <u>node tree</u>. Some of the <u>nodes</u> in a <u>tree</u> can have children, while others are always leaves.

To illustrate, consider this HTML document:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html class=e>
  <head><title>Aliens?</title></head>
  <body>Why yes.</body>
</html>
```

It is represented as follows:

```
Document
Doctype: html
Element: html class="e"
Element: head
Lelement: title
Lend: Aliens?
Text: Aliens?
Element: body
Lend: Why yes.
```

Note that, due to the magic that is <u>HTML parsing</u>, not all <u>ASCII whitespace</u> were turned into <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, but the general concept is clear. Markup goes in, a <u>tree</u> of <u>nodes</u> comes out.

#### Note

The most excellent <u>Live DOM Viewer</u> can be used to explore this matter in more detail.

# 4.2. Node tree

<u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment</u> objects (simply called **nodes**) <u>participate</u> in a <u>tree</u>, simply named the **node tree**.

A <u>node tree</u> is constrained as follows, expressed as a relationship between the type of <u>node</u> and its allowed <u>children</u>:

#### **Document**

In tree order:

- Zero or more nodes each of which is <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> or <u>Comment</u>.
- 2. Optionally one <a href="DocumentType">DocumentType</a> node.
- 3. Zero or more nodes each of which is <a href="ProcessingInstruction">ProcessingInstruction</a> or Comment.
- 4. Optionally one **Element** node.
- 5. Zero or more nodes each of which is <a href="ProcessingInstruction">ProcessingInstruction</a> or <a href="Comment">Comment</a>.

## **DocumentFragment**

## **Element**

Zero or more nodes each of which is <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u>.

## **DocumentType**

**Text** 

**ProcessingInstruction** 

Comment

None.

To determine the **length** of a <u>node</u> node, switch on node:

→ <u>DocumentType</u>

Zero.

- → Text
- → ProcessingInstruction
- **→** Comment

Its data's length.

→ Any other node

Its number of children.

A <u>node</u> is considered **empty** if its <u>length</u> is zero.

# § 4.2.1. Document tree

A **document tree** is a <u>node tree</u> whose <u>root</u> is a <u>document</u>.

The **document** of a <u>document</u> is the <u>element</u> whose <u>parent</u> is that <u>document</u>, if it exists, and null otherwise.

Note

Per the <u>node tree</u> constraints, there can be only one such <u>element</u>.

An <u>element</u> is **in a document tree** if its <u>root</u> is a <u>document</u>.

An <u>element</u> is **in a document** if it is <u>in a document tree</u>. Note *The term <u>in a document</u>* is no longer supposed to be used. It indicates that the standard using it

#### § 4.2.2. Shadow tree

A **shadow tree** is a <u>node tree</u> whose <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>.

A <u>shadow root</u> is always attached to another <u>node tree</u> through its <u>host</u>. A <u>shadow tree</u> is therefore never alone. The <u>node tree</u> of a <u>shadow root</u>'s <u>host</u> is sometimes referred to as the **light tree**.

#### Note

A <u>shadow tree</u>'s corresponding <u>light tree</u> can be a <u>shadow tree</u> itself.

An <u>element</u> is **connected** if its <u>shadow-including root</u> is a <u>document</u>.

#### § 4.2.2.1. Slots

A <u>shadow tree</u> contains zero or more <u>elements</u> that are **slots**.

#### Note

A slot can only be created through HTML's slot element.

A <u>slot</u> has an associated **name** (a string). Unless stated otherwise it is the empty string.

Use these attribute change steps to update a slot's name:

- 1. If element is a <u>slot</u>, localName is name, and namespace is null, then:
  - 1. If value is oldValue, then return.
  - 2. If value is null and oldValue is the empty string, then return.
  - 3. If value is the empty string and oldValue is null, then return.
  - 4. If *value* is null or the empty string, then set *element*'s <u>name</u> to the empty string.
  - 5. Otherwise, set *element's* name to *value*.
  - 6. Run <u>assign slottables for a tree</u> with *element*'s <u>root</u>.

#### Note

The first <u>slot</u> in a <u>shadow tree</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, whose <u>name</u> is the empty string, is sometimes known as the "default slot".

A <u>slot</u> has an associated **assigned nodes** (a list of <u>slottables</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is empty.

**Element** and **Text nodes** are **slottables**.

Note

A slot can be a slottable.

A <u>slottable</u> has an associated **name** (a string). Unless stated otherwise it is the empty string.

Use these attribute change steps to update a slottable's name:

- 1. If localName is slot and namespace is null, then:
  - 1. If value is oldValue, then return.
  - 2. If value is null and oldValue is the empty string, then return.
  - 3. If value is the empty string and oldValue is null, then return.
  - 4. If *value* is null or the empty string, then set *element*'s <u>name</u> to the empty string.
  - 5. Otherwise, set *element's* name to *value*.
  - 6. If *element* is <u>assigned</u>, then run <u>assign slottables</u> for *element*'s <u>assigned slot</u>.
  - 7. Run <u>assign a slot</u> for *element*.

A <u>slottable</u> has an associated **assigned slot** (null or a <u>slot</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is null. A <u>slottable</u> is **assigned** if its <u>assigned slot</u> is non-null.

# § 4.2.2.3. Finding slots and slottables

To **find a slot** for a given <u>slottable</u> *slottable* and an optional *open flag* (unset unless stated otherwise), run these steps:

- 1. If slottable's parent is null, then return null.
- 2. Let shadow be slottable's parent's shadow root.
- 3. If shadow is null, then return null.
- 4. If the open flag is set and shadow's mode is not "open", then return null.
- 5. Return the first <u>slot</u> in <u>tree order</u> in <u>shadow</u>'s <u>descendants</u> whose <u>name</u> is <u>slottable</u>'s <u>name</u>, if any, and null otherwise.

To **find slottables** for a given <u>slot</u> *slot*, run these steps:

- 1. Let result be an empty list.
- 2. If slot's root is not a shadow root, then return result.
- 3. Let *host* be *slot*'s <u>root</u>'s <u>host</u>.
- 4. For each slottable child of host, slottable, in tree order:
  - 1. Let foundSlot be the result of finding a slot given slottable.

- 2. If foundSlot is slot, then append slottable to result.
- 5. Return result.

To **find flattened slottables** for a given <u>slot</u> *slot*, run these steps:

- 1. Let result be an empty list.
- 2. If slot's root is not a shadow root, then return result.
- 3. Let *slottables* be the result of finding slottables given *slot*.
- 4. If *slottables* is the empty list, then append each <u>slottable</u> <u>child</u> of *slot*, in <u>tree</u> <u>order</u>, to *slottables*.
- 5. For each node in slottables:
  - 1. If node is a slot whose root is a shadow root, then:
    - 1. Let *temporaryResult* be the result of <u>finding flattened slottables</u> given *node*.
    - 2. Append each <u>slottable</u> in *temporaryResult*, in order, to *result*.
  - 2. Otherwise, append *node* to *result*.
- 6. Return result.

# § 4.2.2.4. Assigning slottables and slots

To **assign slottables** for a <u>slot</u> *slot*, run these steps:

- 1. Let *slottables* be the result of <u>finding slottables</u> for *slot*.
- 2. If *slottables* and *slot*'s <u>assigned nodes</u> are not identical, then run <u>signal a slot</u> <u>change</u> for *slot*.
- 3. Set slot's assigned nodes to slottables.
- 4. For each *slottable* in *slottables*, set *slottable*'s <u>assigned slot</u> to *slot*.

To **assign slottables for a tree**, given a <u>node</u> <u>root</u>, run <u>assign slottables</u> for each <u>slot slot</u> in <u>root</u>'s <u>inclusive descendants</u>, in <u>tree order</u>.

To **assign a slot**, given a <u>slottable</u> *slottable*, run these steps:

- 1. Let *slot* be the result of finding a slot with *slottable*.
- 2. If *slot* is non-null, then run <u>assign slottables</u> for *slot*.

## § 4.2.2.5. Signaling slot change

Each <u>similar-origin window agent</u> has **signal slots** (a <u>set</u> of <u>slots</u>), which is initially empty. [HTML]

To **signal a slot change**, for a <u>slot</u> *slot*, run these steps:

1. Append slot to slot's relevant agent's signal slots.

2. Queue a mutation observer microtask.

# § 4.2.3. Mutation algorithms

To **ensure pre-insertion validity** of a *node* into a *parent* before a *child*, run these steps:

- 1. If parent is not a <u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, or <u>Element</u> <u>node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If node is a <u>host-including inclusive ancestor</u> of parent, then <u>throw</u> a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.
- If child is non-null and its <u>parent</u> is not parent, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotFoundError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If node is not a <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 5. If either node is a <u>Text node</u> and parent is a <u>document</u>, or node is a <u>doctype</u> and parent is not a <u>document</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 6. If *parent* is a <u>document</u>, and any of the statements below, switched on *node*, are true, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

## → DocumentFragment node

If node has more than one element child or has a Text node child.

Otherwise, if *node* has one <u>element</u> <u>child</u> and either *parent* has an <u>element</u> <u>child</u>, *child* is a <u>doctype</u>, or *child* is non-null and a <u>doctype</u> is <u>following</u> *child*.

### **⇔** element

parent has an <u>element child</u>, child is a <u>doctype</u>, or child is non-null and a <u>doctype</u> is <u>following</u> child.

### → doctype

parent has a <u>doctype child</u>, child is non-null and an <u>element</u> is <u>preceding child</u>, or child is null and parent has an <u>element child</u>.

To **pre-insert** a *node* into a *parent* before a *child*, run these steps:

- 1. Ensure pre-insertion validity of node into parent before child.
- 2. Let referenceChild be child.
- 3. If referenceChild is node, then set referenceChild to node's next sibling.
- 4. <u>Insert</u> node into parent before referenceChild.
- 5. Return node.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **insertion steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed *insertedNode*, as indicated in the <u>insert</u> algorithm below.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **children changed steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed no argument and is called from insert, remove, and replace data.

To **insert** a *node* into a *parent* before a *child*, with an optional *suppress observers* flag, run these steps:

- Let nodes be node's <u>children</u>, if node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>; otherwise « node ».
- 2. Let count be nodes's size.
- 3. If count is 0, then return.
- 4. If node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> node, then:
  - 1. Remove its children with the suppress observers flag set.
  - 2. Queue a tree mutation record for node with « », nodes, null, and null.

#### Note

This step intentionally does not pay attention to the suppress observers flag.

- 5. If child is non-null, then:
  - 1. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>parent</u> and <u>start offset</u> is greater than <u>child</u>'s <u>index</u>, increase its <u>start offset</u> by <u>count</u>.
  - 2. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>parent</u> and <u>end offset</u> is greater than <u>child</u>'s <u>index</u>, increase its <u>end offset</u> by <u>count</u>.
- 6. Let *previousSibling* be *child*'s <u>previous sibling</u> or *parent*'s <u>last child</u> if *child* is null.
- 7. For each *node* in *nodes*, in <u>tree order</u>:
  - 1. Adopt node into parent's node document.
  - 2. If child is null, then append node to parent's children.
  - 3. Otherwise, insert node into parent's children before child's index.
  - 4. If parent is a <u>shadow host</u> and *node* is a <u>slottable</u>, then <u>assign a slot</u> for node.
  - 5. If parent's <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and <u>parent</u> is a <u>slot</u> whose <u>assigned nodes</u> is the empty list, then run <u>signal a slot change</u> for <u>parent</u>.
  - 6. Run <u>assign slottables for a tree</u> with *node*'s <u>root</u>.
  - 7. For each <u>shadow-including inclusive descendant</u> inclusiveDescendant of node, in <u>shadow-including tree order</u>:
    - 1. Run the insertion steps with inclusiveDescendant.
    - 2. If *inclusiveDescendant* is <u>connected</u>, then:
      - If inclusiveDescendant is <u>custom</u>, then <u>enqueue a</u> <u>custom element callback reaction</u> with inclusiveDescendant, callback name "connectedCallback", and an empty argument list.

2. Otherwise, try to upgrade inclusiveDescendant.

#### Note

If this successfully upgrades inclusiveDescendant, its connectedCallback will be enqueued automatically during the <u>upgrade an element</u> algorithm.

- 8. If *suppress observers flag* is unset, then <u>queue a tree mutation record</u> for *parent* with *nodes*, « », *previousSibling*, and *child*.
- 9. Run the children changed steps for parent.

To **append** a *node* to a *parent*, <u>pre-insert</u> *node* into *parent* before null.

To **replace** a *child* with *node* within a *parent*, run these steps:

- 1. If parent is not a <u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, or <u>Element</u> <u>node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.
- 2. If *node* is a <u>host-including inclusive ancestor</u> of *parent*, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If child's parent is not parent, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 4. If node is not a <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "HierarchyRequestError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 5. If either node is a <u>Text node</u> and parent is a <u>document</u>, or node is a <u>doctype</u> and parent is not a <u>document</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 6. If *parent* is a <u>document</u>, and any of the statements below, switched on *node*, are true, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

# → DocumentFragment node

If node has more than one element child or has a Text node child.

Otherwise, if *node* has one <u>element child</u> and either *parent* has an <u>element child</u> that is not *child* or a <u>doctype</u> is <u>following</u> *child*.

### <u>element</u>

parent has an <u>element child</u> that is not *child* or a <u>doctype</u> is <u>following child</u>.

### 

parent has a <u>doctype</u> <u>child</u> that is not <u>child</u>, or an <u>element</u> is <u>preceding child</u>.

# Note

The above statements differ from the <u>pre-insert</u> algorithm.

- 7. Let referenceChild be child's next sibling.
- 8. If referenceChild is node, then set referenceChild to node's next sibling.
- 9. Let *previousSibling* be *child*'s <u>previous sibling</u>.

- 10. Let removedNodes be the empty set.
- 11. If child's parent is non-null, then:
  - 1. Set removedNodes to « child ».
  - 2. Remove child with the suppress observers flag set.

#### Note

The above can only be false if child is node.

- 12. Let nodes be node's <u>children</u> if node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>; otherwise « node ».
- 13. <u>Insert</u> node into parent before referenceChild with the suppress observers flag set.
- 14. <u>Queue a tree mutation record</u> for parent with nodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, and referenceChild.
- 15. Return child.

To **replace all** with a *node* within a *parent*, run these steps:

- 1. Let removedNodes be parent's children.
- 2. Let addedNodes be the empty set.
- 3. If node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>, then set addedNodes to node's <u>children</u>.
- 4. Otherwise, if node is non-null, set addedNodes to « node ».
- 5. <u>Remove</u> all *parent's* <u>children</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, with the *suppress observers flag* set.
- 6. If *node* is non-null, then <u>insert</u> *node* into *parent* before null with the *suppress* observers flag set.
- 7. If either addedNodes or removedNodes is not empty, then <u>queue a tree</u> mutation record for parent with addedNodes, removedNodes, null, and null.

# Note

This algorithm does not make any checks with regards to the <u>node tree</u> constraints. Specification authors need to use it wisely.

To **pre-remove** a *child* from a *parent*, run these steps:

- 1. If child's parent is not parent, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 2. Remove child.
- 3. Return child.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **removing steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed *removedNode*, and optionally *oldParent*, as indicated in the <u>remove</u> algorithm below.

To **remove** a *node*, with an optional *suppress observers flag*, run these steps:

1. Let parent be node's parent

- 2. Assert: parent is non-null.
- 3. Let *index* be *node*'s <u>index</u>.
- 4. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is an <u>inclusive descendant</u> of *node*, set its <u>start</u> to (*parent*, *index*).
- 5. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is an <u>inclusive descendant</u> of *node*, set its <u>end</u> to (*parent*, *index*).
- 6. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>parent</u> and <u>start offset</u> is greater than <u>index</u>, decrease its <u>start offset</u> by 1.
- 7. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>parent</u> and <u>end offset</u> is greater than <u>index</u>, decrease its end offset by 1.
- 8. For each <u>NodeIterator</u> object *iterator* whose <u>root</u>'s <u>node document</u> is <u>node</u>'s <u>node document</u>, run the <u>NodeIterator</u> <u>pre-removing steps</u> given <u>node</u> and <u>iterator</u>.
- 9. Let *oldPreviousSibling* be *node*'s <u>previous sibling</u>.
- 10. Let oldNextSibling be node's next sibling.
- 11. Remove node from its parent's children.
- 12. If node is <u>assigned</u>, then run <u>assign slottables</u> for node's <u>assigned slot</u>.
- 13. If parent's <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and <u>parent</u> is a <u>slot</u> whose <u>assigned nodes</u> is the empty list, then run <u>signal a slot change</u> for <u>parent</u>.
- 14. If *node* has an <u>inclusive descendant</u> that is a <u>slot</u>, then:
  - 1. Run assign slottables for a tree with parent's root.
  - 2. Run <u>assign slottables for a tree</u> with *node*.
- 15. Run the <u>removing steps</u> with *node* and *parent*.
- 16. Let *isParentConnected* be *parent's* connected.
- 17. If node is <u>custom</u> and <u>isParentConnected</u> is true, then <u>enqueue a custom</u> <u>element callback reaction</u> with <u>node</u>, callback name "disconnectedCallback", and an empty argument list.

#### Note

It is intentional for now that <u>custom elements</u> do not get parent passed. This might change in the future if there is a need.

- 18. For each <u>shadow-including descendant</u> <u>descendant</u> of <u>node</u>, in <u>shadow-including tree order</u>, then:
  - 1. Run the <u>removing steps</u> with *descendant*.
  - 2. If descendant is <u>custom</u> and isParentConnected is true, then <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with descendant, callback name "disconnectedCallback", and an empty argument list.
- 19. For each <u>inclusive ancestor</u> inclusiveAncestor of parent, and then <u>for each</u> registered of inclusiveAncestor's <u>registered observer list</u>, if registered's <u>options</u>'s <u>subtree</u> is true, then <u>append</u> a new <u>transient registered observer</u> whose <u>observer</u> is registered's <u>observer</u>, <u>options</u> is registered's <u>options</u>, and

source is registered to node's registered observer list.

- 20. If *suppress observers flag* is unset, then <u>queue a tree mutation record</u> for *parent* with « », « *node* », *oldPreviousSibling*, and *oldNextSibling*.
- 21. Run the children changed steps for parent.

# § 4.2.4. Mixin NonElementParentNode

#### Note

Web compatibility prevents the <u>getElementById()</u> method from being exposed on <u>elements</u> (and therefore on <u>ParentNode</u>).

```
interface mixin NonElementParentNode {
    Element? getElementById(DOMString elementId);
};
Document includes NonElementParentNode;
DocumentFragment includes NonElementParentNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

## node . getElementById(elementId)

Returns the first <u>element</u> within *node*'s <u>descendants</u> whose <u>ID</u> is *elementId*.

The **getElementById**(*elementId*) method, when invoked, must return the first <u>element</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, within <u>this</u>'s <u>descendants</u>, whose <u>ID</u> is *elementId*, and null if there is no such element otherwise.

# § 4.2.5. Mixin <u>DocumentOrShadowRoot</u>

```
interface mixin DocumentOrShadowRoot {
};
Document includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;
ShadowRoot includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;
```

### Note

The <u>DocumentOrShadowRoot</u> mixin is expected to be used by other standards that want to define APIs shared between <u>documents</u> and <u>shadow roots</u>.

# § 4.2.6. Mixin ParentNode

To **convert nodes into a node**, given *nodes* and *document*, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be null.
- 2. Replace each string in nodes with a new Text node whose data is the string

and node document is document.

- 3. If nodes contains one node, set node to that node.
- 4. Otherwise, set *node* to a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> whose <u>node document</u> is *document*, and then append each node in *nodes*, if any, to it.
- 5. Return node.

```
interface mixin ParentNode {
  [SameObject] readonly attribute HTMLCollection children;
  readonly attribute Element? firstElementChild;
  readonly attribute Element? lastElementChild;
  readonly attribute unsigned long childElementCount;
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined prepend((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined append((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceChildren((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  Element? querySelector(DOMString selectors);
  [NewObject] NodeList querySelectorAll(DOMString selectors);
};
Document includes ParentNode;
DocumentFragment includes ParentNode;
Element includes ParentNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
collection = node . children
```

Returns the child elements.

## element = node . firstElementChild

Returns the first child that is an element, and null otherwise.

# element = node . lastElementChild

Returns the last child that is an element, and null otherwise.

## node . prepend(nodes)

Inserts *nodes* before the <u>first child</u> of *node*, while replacing strings in *nodes* with equivalent <u>Text nodes</u>.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the node tree are violated.

## node . append(nodes)

Inserts *nodes* after the <u>last child</u> of *node*, while replacing strings in *nodes* with equivalent Text nodes.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the <u>node tree</u> are violated.

## node . replaceChildren(nodes)

Replace all <u>children</u> of *node* with *nodes*, while replacing strings in *nodes* with equivalent <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the node tree are violated.

# node . guerySelector(selectors)

Returns the first <u>element</u> that is a <u>descendant</u> of *node* that matches *selectors*.

# node . querySelectorAll(selectors)

Returns all element descendants of node that match selectors.

The **children** attribute's getter must return an <u>HTMLCollection</u> collection rooted at this matching only <u>element children</u>.

The **firstElementChild** attribute's getter must return the first <u>child</u> that is an element, and null otherwise.

The **lastElementChild** attribute's getter must return the last <u>child</u> that is an <u>element</u>, and null otherwise.

The **childElementCount** attribute's getter must return the number of <u>children</u> of <u>this</u> that are <u>elements</u>.

The **prepend** (*nodes*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *node* be the result of <u>converting nodes into a node</u> given *nodes* and <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. Pre-insert node into this before this's first child.

The append (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *node* be the result of <u>converting nodes into a node</u> given *nodes* and <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. Append node to this.

The **replaceChildren**(**nodes**) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *node* be the result of <u>converting nodes into a node</u> given *nodes* and <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. Ensure pre-insertion validity of node into this before null.
- 3. Replace all with node within this.

The querySelector(selectors) method, when invoked, must return the first result of running scope-match a selectors string selectors against this, if the result is not an empty list, and null otherwise.

The querySelectorAll(selectors) method, when invoked, must return the <u>static</u> result of running <u>scope-match a selectors string</u> selectors against <u>this</u>.

# § 4.2.7. Mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode

# Note

Web compatibility prevents the <u>previousElementSibling</u> and <u>nextElementSibling</u> attributes from being exposed on <u>doctypes</u> (and therefore on <u>ChildNode</u>).

```
interface mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode {
   readonly attribute Element? previousElementSibling;
   readonly attribute Element? nextElementSibling;
};
Element includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
CharacterData includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
element = node . previousElementSibling
```

Returns the first preceding sibling that is an element, and null otherwise.

```
element = node . nextElementSibling
```

Returns the first following sibling that is an element, and null otherwise.

The **previousElementSibling** attribute's getter must return the first <u>preceding</u> sibling that is an element, and null otherwise.

The **nextElementSibling** attribute's getter must return the first <u>following</u> <u>sibling</u> that is an <u>element</u>, and null otherwise.

### § 4.2.8. Mixin ChildNode

```
interface mixin ChildNode {
   [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined before((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
   [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined after((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
   [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceWith((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
   [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined remove();
};
DocumentType includes ChildNode;
Element includes ChildNode;
CharacterData includes ChildNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

# node . before(...nodes)

Inserts *nodes* just before *node*, while replacing strings in *nodes* with equivalent <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the <u>node tree</u> are violated.

# node . after(...nodes)

Inserts *nodes* just after *node*, while replacing strings in *nodes* with equivalent <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the <u>node tree</u> are violated.

# node . replaceWith(...nodes)

Replaces *node* with *nodes*, while replacing strings in *nodes* with equivalent <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the node tree are violated.

node . remove()

Removes node.

The **before**(*nodes*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be this's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then return.
- 3. Let *viablePreviousSibling* be <u>this</u>'s first <u>preceding sibling</u> not in *nodes*, and null otherwise.
- 4. Let *node* be the result of <u>converting nodes into a node</u>, given *nodes* and <u>this</u>'s node document.
- 5. If *viablePreviousSibling* is null, set it to *parent*'s <u>first child</u>, and to *viablePreviousSibling*'s <u>next sibling</u> otherwise.
- 6. <u>Pre-insert</u> node into parent before viablePreviousSibling.

The after (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be this's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then return.
- 3. Let *viableNextSibling* be <u>this</u>'s first <u>following</u> <u>sibling</u> not in *nodes*, and null otherwise.
- 4. Let *node* be the result of <u>converting nodes into a node</u>, given *nodes* and <u>this</u>'s node document.
- 5. Pre-insert node into parent before viableNextSibling.

The **replaceWith**(**nodes**) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be this's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then return.
- 3. Let *viableNextSibling* be <u>this</u>'s first <u>following</u> <u>sibling</u> not in *nodes*, and null otherwise.
- 4. Let *node* be the result of <u>converting nodes into a node</u>, given *nodes* and <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 5. If this's parent is parent, replace this with node within parent.

Note

This could have been inserted into node.

6. Otherwise, <u>pre-insert</u> node into parent before viableNextSibling.

The **remove()** method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this's parent is null, then return.
- 2. Remove this.

# § 4.2.9. Mixin Slottable

```
interface mixin Slottable {
   readonly attribute HTMLSlotElement? assignedSlot;
};
Element includes Slottable;
Text includes Slottable;
```

The **assignedSlot** attribute's getter must return the result of <u>find a slot</u> given <u>this</u> and with the *open flag* set.

# § 4.2.10. Old-style collections: <u>NodeList</u> and <u>HTMLCollection</u>

A **collection** is an object that represents a list of <u>nodes</u>. A <u>collection</u> can be either **live** or **static**. Unless otherwise stated, a <u>collection</u> must be <u>live</u>.

If a <u>collection</u> is <u>live</u>, then the attributes and methods on that object must operate on the actual underlying data, not a snapshot of the data.

When a <u>collection</u> is created, a filter and a root are associated with it.

The <u>collection</u> then **represents** a view of the subtree rooted at the <u>collection's</u> root, containing only nodes that match the given filter. The view is linear. In the absence of specific requirements to the contrary, the nodes within the <u>collection</u> must be sorted in tree order.

### § 4.2.10.1. Interface NodeList

A <u>NodeList</u> object is a <u>collection</u> of <u>nodes</u>.

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface NodeList {
  getter Node? item(unsigned long index);
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  iterable<Node>;
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

## collection . length

Returns the number of <u>nodes</u> in the <u>collection</u>.

```
element = collection . item(index)
element = collection[index]
```

Returns the <u>node</u> with index *index* from the <u>collection</u>. The <u>nodes</u> are sorted in <u>tree order</u>.

The object's <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to one less than the number of nodes <u>represented by the collection</u>. If there are no such elements, then there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The **length** attribute must return the number of nodes <u>represented by the collection</u>.

The item(index) method must return the  $index^{th}$  node in the <u>collection</u>. If there is no  $index^{th}$  node in the <u>collection</u>, then the method must return null.

# § 4.2.10.2. Interface HTMLCollection

```
[Exposed=Window, LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties]
interface HTMLCollection {
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  getter Element? item(unsigned long index);
  getter Element? namedItem(DOMString name);
};
```

An HTMLCollection object is a collection of elements.

#### Note

<u>HTMLCollection</u> is a historical artifact we cannot rid the web of. While developers are of course welcome to keep using it, new API standard designers ought not to use it (use sequence<T> in IDL instead).

For web developers (non-normative)

```
collection . length
```

Returns the number of elements in the collection.

```
element = collection . item(index)
element = collection[index]
```

Returns the <u>element</u> with index *index* from the <u>collection</u>. The <u>elements</u> are sorted in <u>tree order</u>.

```
element = collection . namedItem(name)
element = collection[name]
```

Returns the first <u>element</u> with <u>ID</u> or name *name* from the collection.

The object's <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to one less than the number of elements <u>represented by the collection</u>. If there are no such elements, then there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The **length** attribute's getter must return the number of nodes <u>represented by the collection</u>.

The item(index) method, when invoked, must return the  $index^{th}$  <u>element</u> in the <u>collection</u>. If there is no  $index^{th}$  <u>element</u> in the <u>collection</u>, then the method must return null.

The <u>supported property names</u> are the values from the list returned by these steps:

- 1. Let result be an empty list.
- 2. For each *element* represented by the collection, in tree order:
  - 1. If element has an <u>ID</u> which is not in result, append element's <u>ID</u> to result.

- 2. If element is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and <u>has</u> a <u>name attribute</u> whose <u>value</u> is neither the empty string nor is in result, append element's <u>name attribute value</u> to result.
- 3. Return result.

The namedItem(key) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If key is the empty string, return null.
- 2. Return the first <u>element</u> in the <u>collection</u> for which at least one of the following is true:
  - o it has an ID which is key;
  - it is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and <u>has</u> a <u>name attribute</u> whose <u>value</u> is key;

or null if there is no such element.

# 4.3. Mutation observers

Each <u>similar-origin window agent</u> has a **mutation observer microtask queued** (a boolean), which is initially false. [HTML]

Each <u>similar-origin window agent</u> also has **mutation observers** (a <u>set</u> of zero or more <u>MutationObserver</u> objects), which is initially empty.

To queue a mutation observer microtask, run these steps:

- 1. If the <u>surrounding agent</u>'s <u>mutation observer microtask queued</u> is true, then return.
- 2. Set the surrounding agent's mutation observer microtask queued to true.
- 3. Queue a microtask to notify mutation observers.

To **notify mutation observers**, run these steps:

- 1. Set the <u>surrounding agent's mutation observer microtask queued</u> to false.
- 2. Let *notifySet* be a <u>clone</u> of the <u>surrounding agent</u>'s <u>mutation observers</u>.
- 3. Let signalSet be a clone of the surrounding agent's signal slots.
- 4. Empty the surrounding agent's signal slots.
- 5. For each mo of notifySet:
  - 1. Let records be a clone of mo's record queue.
  - 2. Empty mo's record queue.
  - 3. <u>For each node</u> of mo's <u>node list</u>, <u>remove</u> all <u>transient registered</u> <u>observers</u> whose <u>observer</u> is mo from node's <u>registered observer list</u>.
  - 4. If records is not empty, then invoke mo's callback with « records, mo », and mo. If this throws an exception, catch it, and report the exception.

6. <u>For each</u> *slot* of *signalSet*, <u>fire an event</u> named <u>slotchange</u>, with its <u>bubbles</u> attribute set to true, at *slot*.

Each <u>node</u> has a **registered observer list** (a <u>list</u> of zero or more <u>registered</u> observers), which is initially empty.

A **registered observer** consists of an **observer** (a <u>MutationObserver</u> object) and **options** (a <u>MutationObserverInit</u> dictionary).

A **transient registered observer** is a <u>registered observer</u> that also consists of a **source** (a <u>registered observer</u>).

Note

<u>Transient registered observers</u> are used to track mutations within a given <u>node</u>'s <u>descendants</u> after <u>node</u> has been removed so they do not get lost when <u>subtree</u> is set to true on <u>node</u>'s <u>parent</u>.

# § 4.3.1. Interface MutationObserver

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface MutationObserver {
  constructor(MutationCallback callback);
  undefined observe(Node target, optional MutationObserverInit
options = {});
  undefined disconnect();
  sequence<MutationRecord> takeRecords();
};
callback MutationCallback = undefined
(sequence<MutationRecord> mutations, MutationObserver
observer);
dictionary MutationObserverInit {
  boolean childList = false;
  boolean attributes;
  boolean characterData;
  boolean subtree = false;
  boolean attributeOldValue;
  boolean characterDataOldValue;
  sequence<DOMString> attributeFilter;
};
```

A <u>MutationObserver</u> object can be used to observe mutations to the <u>tree</u> of <u>nodes</u>.

Each MutationObserver object has these associated concepts:

- A callback set on creation.
- A node list (a list of nodes), which is initially empty.
- A record queue (a gueue of zero or more MutationRecord objects), which is

initially empty.

For web developers (non-normative)

# observer = new MutationObserver(callback)

Constructs a <u>MutationObserver</u> object and sets its <u>callback</u> to <u>callback</u>. The <u>callback</u> is invoked with a list of <u>MutationRecord</u> objects as first argument and the constructed <u>MutationObserver</u> object as second argument. It is invoked after <u>nodes</u> registered with the <u>observe()</u> method, are mutated.

# observer . observe(target, options)

Instructs the user agent to observe a given *target* (a <u>node</u>) and report any mutations based on the criteria given by *options* (an object).

The *options* argument allows for setting mutation observation options via object members. These are the object members that can be used:

# <u>childList</u>

Set to true if mutations to target's children are to be observed.

### attributes

Set to true if mutations to *target*'s <u>attributes</u> are to be observed. Can be omitted if <u>attributeOldValue</u> or <u>attributeFilter</u> is specified.

# <u>characterData</u>

Set to true if mutations to *target*'s <u>data</u> are to be observed. Can be omitted if <u>characterDataOldValue</u> is specified.

# subtree

Set to true if mutations to not just *target*, but also *target*'s descendants are to be observed.

# attributeOldValue

Set to true if <u>attributes</u> is true or omitted and *target*'s <u>attribute</u> value before the mutation needs to be recorded.

#### characterDataOldValue

Set to true if <u>characterData</u> is set to true or omitted and *target*'s <u>data</u> before the mutation needs to be recorded.

# attributeFilter

Set to a list of <u>attribute local names</u> (without <u>namespace</u>) if not all <u>attribute</u> mutations need to be observed and <u>attributes</u> is true or omitted.

# observer . disconnect()

Stops *observer* from observing any mutations. Until the <u>observe()</u> method is used again, *observer*'s <u>callback</u> will not be invoked.

# observer . takeRecords()

Empties the <u>record queue</u> and returns what was in there.

The MutationObserver(callback) constructor, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *mo* be a new MutationObserver object whose callback is callback.
- 2. <u>Append mo</u> to mo's <u>relevant agent's mutation observers</u>.
- 3. Return mo.

The observe(target, options) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If either *options*'s <u>attributeOldValue</u> or <u>attributeFilter</u> is present and *options*'s <u>attributes</u> is omitted, then set *options*'s <u>attributes</u> to true.
- 2. If *options*'s <u>characterDataOldValue</u> is present and *options*'s <u>characterData</u> is omitted, then set *options*'s <u>characterData</u> to true.
- 3. If none of *options*'s <u>childList</u>, <u>attributes</u>, and <u>characterData</u> is true, then <u>throw</u> a TypeError.
- 4. If *options*'s <u>attributeOldValue</u> is true and *options*'s <u>attributes</u> is false, then <u>throw</u> a TypeError.
- 5. If *options*'s <u>attributeFilter</u> is present and *options*'s <u>attributes</u> is false, then throw a TypeError.
- 6. If *options*'s <u>characterDataOldValue</u> is true and *options*'s <u>characterData</u> is false, then <u>throw</u> a TypeError.
- 7. <u>For each</u> registered of target's <u>registered observer list</u>, if <u>registered</u>'s <u>observer</u> is <u>this</u>:
  - 1. For each node of this's node list, remove all transient registered observers whose source is registered from node's registered observer list.
  - 2. Set registered's options to options.
- 8. Otherwise:
  - 1. <u>Append</u> a new <u>registered observer</u> whose <u>observer</u> is <u>this</u> and <u>options</u> is <u>options</u> to <u>target</u>'s <u>registered observer list</u>.
  - 2. Append target to this's node list.

The disconnect() method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. <u>For each node</u> of <u>this</u>'s <u>node list</u>, <u>remove</u> any <u>registered observer</u> from <u>node</u>'s <u>registered observer list</u> for which <u>this</u> is the <u>observer</u>.
- 2. Empty this's record queue.

The takeRecords() method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let records be a <u>clone</u> of <u>this</u>'s <u>record queue</u>.
- 2. Empty this's record queue.
- 3. Return records.

## § 4.3.2. Queuing a mutation record

To **queue a mutation record** of *type* for *target* with *name*, *namespace*, *oldValue*, *addedNodes*, *removedNodes*, *previousSibling*, and *nextSibling*, run these steps:

- 1. Let *interestedObservers* be an empty map.
- 2. Let *nodes* be the inclusive ancestors of *target*.
- 3. For each node in nodes, and then for each registered of node's registered

## observer list:

- 1. Let options be registered's options.
- 2. If none of the following are true
  - node is not target and options's subtree is false
  - type is "attributes" and options's attributes is not true
  - type is "attributes", options's attributeFilter and options's attributeFilter does not contain name or namespace is non-null
  - type is "characterData" and options's characterData is not true
  - type is "childList" and options's childList is false

### then:

- 1. Let mo be registered's observer.
- 2. If *interestedObservers*[*mo*] does not <u>exist</u>, then <u>set</u> *interestedObservers*[*mo*] to null.
- 3. If either type is "attributes" and options's <a href="mailto:attribute0ldValue">attribute0ldValue</a> is true, or type is "characterData" and options's <a href="mailto:characterData0ldValue">characterData0ldValue</a> is true, then <a href="mailto:set">set</a> interestedObservers[mo] to oldValue.
- 4. For each observer → mappedOldValue of interestedObservers:
  - Let record be a new MutationRecord object with its type set to type, target set to target, attributeName set to name, attributeNamespace set to namespace, oldValue set to mappedOldValue, addedNodes set to addedNodes, removedNodes set to removedNodes, previousSibling set to previousSibling, and nextSibling set to nextSibling.
  - 2. <u>Enqueue</u> record to observer's <u>record queue</u>.
- 5. Queue a mutation observer microtask.

To **queue a tree mutation record** for *target* with *addedNodes*, *removedNodes*, *previousSibling*, and *nextSibling*, run these steps:

- 1. Assert: either addedNodes or removedNodes is not empty.
- 2. <u>Queue a mutation record</u> of "childList" for *target* with null, null, null, addedNodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, and nextSibling.

### § 4.3.3. Interface MutationRecord

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface MutationRecord {
   readonly attribute DOMString type;
   [SameObject] readonly attribute Node target;
   [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList addedNodes;
   [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList removedNodes;
   readonly attribute Node? previousSibling;
   readonly attribute Node? nextSibling;
   readonly attribute DOMString? attributeName;
```

```
readonly attribute <u>DOMString</u>? <u>attributeNamespace</u>;
readonly attribute <u>DOMString</u>? <u>oldValue</u>;
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

# record . type

Returns "attributes" if it was an <u>attribute</u> mutation. "characterData" if it was a mutation to a <u>CharacterData node</u>. And "childList" if it was a mutation to the <u>tree</u> of <u>nodes</u>.

## record . target

Returns the <u>node</u> the mutation affected, depending on the <u>type</u>. For "attributes", it is the <u>element</u> whose <u>attribute</u> changed. For "characterData", it is the <u>CharacterData</u> <u>node</u>. For "childList", it is the <u>node</u> whose <u>children</u> changed.

record . addedNodes
record . removedNodes

Return the nodes added and removed respectively.

record . previousSibling
record . nextSibling

Return the <u>previous</u> and <u>next sibling</u> respectively of the added or removed <u>nodes</u>, and null otherwise.

# record . attributeName

Returns the <u>local name</u> of the changed <u>attribute</u>, and null otherwise.

# record . attributeNamespace

Returns the <u>namespace</u> of the changed <u>attribute</u>, and null otherwise.

### record . oldValue

The return value depends on <u>type</u>. For "attributes", it is the <u>value</u> of the changed <u>attribute</u> before the change. For "characterData", it is the <u>data</u> of the changed <u>node</u> before the change. For "childList", it is null.

The type, target, addedNodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, nextSibling, attributeName, attributeNamespace, and oldValue attributes must return the values they were initialized to.

### § 4.3.4. Garbage collection

Nodes have a strong reference to registered observers in their registered observer list.

<u>Registered observers</u> in a <u>node</u>'s <u>registered observer list</u> have a weak reference to the <u>node</u>.

# § 4.4. Interface Node

[Exposed=Window]

```
interface Node : EventTarget {
  const unsigned short ELEMENT NODE = 1;
  const unsigned short ATTRIBUTE NODE = 2;
  const unsigned short TEXT NODE = 3;
  const unsigned short CDATA_SECTION_NODE = 4;
  const unsigned short ENTITY_REFERENCE_NODE = 5; // legacy
  const unsigned short ENTITY_NODE = 6; // legacy
  const unsigned short PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE = 7;
  const unsigned short COMMENT NODE = 8;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT NODE = 9;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT TYPE NODE = 10;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE = 11;
  const unsigned short NOTATION_NODE = 12; // legacy
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned short</u> <u>nodeType</u>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> nodeName;
  readonly attribute USVString baseURI;
  readonly attribute boolean isConnected;
  readonly attribute Document? ownerDocument;
  Node getRootNode(optional GetRootNodeOptions options = {});
  readonly attribute Node;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>parentElement</a>;</a>
  boolean hasChildNodes();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList childNodes;
  readonly attribute Node? firstChild;
  readonly attribute Node? lastChild;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="previousSibling">previousSibling</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="nextSibling">nextSibling</a>;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString? nodeValue;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString? textContent;
  [CEReactions] undefined normalize();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node cloneNode(optional boolean
deep = false);
  boolean isEqualNode(Node? otherNode);
  boolean isSameNode(Node? otherNode); // legacy alias of ===
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED = 0x01;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING = 0x02;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION_FOLLOWING = 0x04;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS = 0x08;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY = 0x10;
  const <u>unsigned short</u>
<u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> = 0x20;
  unsigned short compareDocumentPosition(Node other);
  boolean contains(Node? other);
  DOMString? lookupPrefix(DOMString? namespace);
  DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI(DOMString? prefix);
  boolean isDefaultNamespace(DOMString? namespace);
  [CEReactions] Node insertBefore(Node node, Node? child);
  [CEReactions] Node appendChild(Node node);
```

```
[CEReactions] Node replaceChild(Node node, Node child);
[CEReactions] Node removeChild(Node child);
};

dictionary GetRootNodeOptions {
   boolean composed = false;
};
```

#### Note

<u>Node</u> is an abstract interface and does not exist as <u>node</u>. It is used by all <u>nodes</u> (<u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment</u>).

Each node has an associated **node document**, set upon creation, that is a document.

#### Note

A node's node document can be changed by the adopt algorithm.

A <u>node</u>'s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm, given an <u>event</u>, returns the <u>node</u>'s <u>assigned slot</u>, if <u>node</u> is <u>assigned</u>, and <u>node</u>'s <u>parent</u> otherwise.

#### Note

Each node also has a registered observer list.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node . nodeType
```

Returns the type of *node*, represented by a number from the following list:

```
Node . <u>ELEMENT_NODE</u> (1)

node is an element.
```

Node . TEXT\_NODE (3)

node is a <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>.

Node . CDATA\_SECTION\_NODE (4)

node is a <a href="CDATASection">CDATASection</a> node.

Node . PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE (7)

node is a <a href="ProcessingInstruction">ProcessingInstruction</a> node.

Node . COMMENT NODE (8)

node is a **Comment** node.

Node . DOCUMENT\_NODE (9)

node is a document.

Node . DOCUMENT\_TYPE\_NODE (10)

node is a doctype.

Node . DOCUMENT\_FRAGMENT\_NODE (11)

node is a **DocumentFragment** node.

# node . nodeName

Returns a string appropriate for the type of *node*, as follows:

#### <u>Element</u>

Its HTML-uppercased qualified name.

### <u>Attr</u>

Its qualified name.

Text

```
"#text".

CDATASection
    "#cdata-section".

ProcessingInstruction
    Its target.

Comment
    "#comment".

Document
    "#document".

DocumentType
    Its name.

DocumentFragment
    "#document-fragment".
```

The **nodeType** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return the first matching statement, switching on this:

```
ELEMENT_NODE (1)

    Attr

         ATTRIBUTE_NODE (2);

    <u>Text</u>

         TEXT NODE (3);
→ CDATASection
         CDATA_SECTION_NODE (4);
→ ProcessingInstruction
         PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE (7);
→ Comment
         COMMENT_NODE (8);
→ Document
         DOCUMENT_NODE (9);
→ DocumentType
         DOCUMENT_TYPE_NODE (10);
→ <u>DocumentFragment</u>
         DOCUMENT_FRAGMENT_NODE (11).
```

The **nodeName** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return the first matching statement, switching on this:

→ ProcessingInstruction

Its target.

"#comment".

→ Document

"#document".

→ DocumentType

Its <u>name</u>.

→ DocumentFragment

"#document-fragment".

For web developers (non-normative)

# node . baseURI

Returns node's node document's document base URL.

The **baseURI** attribute's getter must return <u>node document</u>'s <u>document base URL</u>, <u>serialized</u>.

ror web developers (non-normative)

## node . isConnected

Returns true if *node* is connected and false otherwise.

## node . ownerDocument

Returns the node document. Returns null for documents.

### node . getRootNode()

Returns node's root.

# node . getRootNode({ composed:true })

Returns node's shadow-including root.

## node . parentNode

Returns the parent.

### node . parentElement

Returns the parent element.

### node . hasChildNodes()

Returns whether node has children.

# node . childNodes

Returns the children.

# node . firstChild

Returns the first child.

# node . <u>lastChild</u>

Returns the last child.

# node . previousSibling

Returns the previous sibling.

### node . nextSibling

Returns the next sibling.

The **isConnected** attribute's getter must return true, if <u>this</u> is <u>connected</u>, and false otherwise.

The **ownerDocument** attribute's getter must return null, if <u>this</u> is a <u>document</u>, and <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u> otherwise.

### Note

The <u>node document</u> of a <u>document</u> is that <u>document</u> itself. All <u>nodes</u> have a <u>node</u> <u>document</u> at all times.

The **getRootNode**(*options*) method, when invoked, must return <u>this</u>'s <u>shadow-including root</u> if *options*'s <u>composed</u> is true, and <u>this</u>'s <u>root</u> otherwise.

The parentNode attribute's getter must return this's parent.

#### Note

An Attr node has no parent.

The parentElement attribute's getter must return this's parent element.

The hasChildNodes() method, when invoked, must return true if this has children, and false otherwise.

The **childNodes** attribute's getter must return a <u>NodeList</u> rooted at <u>this</u> matching only <u>children</u>.

The firstChild attribute's getter must return this's first child.

The lastChild attribute's getter must return this's last child.

The **previousSibling** attribute's getter must return this's previous sibling.

Note

An Attr node has no siblings.

The **nextSibling** attribute's getter must return <u>this</u>'s <u>next sibling</u>.

The nodeValue attribute must return the following, depending on this:

Attr

this's value.

- → Text
- → ProcessingInstruction

this's data.

→ Any other node

Null.

The <u>nodeValue</u> attribute must, on setting, if the new value is null, act as if it was the empty string instead, and then do as described below, depending on this:

**→ Attr** 

Set an existing attribute value with this and new value.

- <u>Text</u>
- → ProcessingInstruction
- **→ Comment**

Replace data with node this, offset 0, count this's length, and data new value.

→ Any other node

Do nothing.

The textContent attribute's getter must return the following, switching on this:

- → <u>DocumentFragment</u>
- **→ Element**

The descendant text content of this.

Attr

this's value.

- → ProcessingInstruction
- **→ Comment**

this's data.

→ Any other node

Null.

To **string replace all** with a string *string* within a <u>node</u> *parent*, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be null.
- 2. If *string* is not the empty string, then set *node* to a new <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>data</u> is *string* and <u>node document</u> is *parent*'s <u>node document</u>.
- 3. Replace all with node within parent.

The <u>textContent</u> attribute's setter must, if the given value is null, act as if it was the empty string instead, and then do as described below, switching on <u>this</u>:

- → <u>DocumentFragment</u>
- **→ Element**

String replace all with the given value within this.

Attr

Set an existing attribute value with this and new value.

- → ProcessingInstruction

Replace data with node this, offset 0, count this's length, and data the given value.

→ Any other node

Do nothing.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node . normalize()
```

Removes <u>empty exclusive Text nodes</u> and concatenates the <u>data</u> of remaining <u>contiguous exclusive Text nodes</u> into the first of their <u>nodes</u>.

The **normalize()** method, when invoked, must run these steps for each <u>descendant</u> <u>exclusive Text node</u> node of <u>this</u>:

- 1. Let length be node's length.
- 2. If *length* is zero, then <u>remove</u> node and continue with the next <u>exclusive Text</u> node, if any.
- 3. Let *data* be the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of *node*'s <u>contiguous exclusive Text</u> <u>nodes</u> (excluding itself), in <u>tree order</u>.
- 4. Replace data with node node, offset length, count 0, and data data.
- 5. Let currentNode be node's next sibling.
- 6. While currentNode is an exclusive Text node:

- 1. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is *currentNode*, add *length* to its start offset and set its start node to *node*.
- 2. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>currentNode</u>, add <u>length</u> to its <u>end offset</u> and set its <u>end node</u> to <u>node</u>.
- 3. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>currentNode</u>'s <u>parent</u> and <u>start offset</u> is <u>currentNode</u>'s <u>index</u>, set its <u>start node</u> to <u>node</u> and its <u>start offset</u> to <u>length</u>.
- For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>currentNode</u>'s <u>parent</u> and <u>end</u> <u>offset</u> is <u>currentNode</u>'s <u>index</u>, set its <u>end node</u> to <u>node</u> and its <u>end</u> <u>offset</u> to <u>length</u>.
- 5. Add currentNode's length to length.
- 6. Set *currentNode* to its <u>next sibling</u>.
- 7. <u>Remove node</u>'s <u>contiguous exclusive Text nodes</u> (excluding itself), in <u>tree</u> <u>order</u>.

For web developers (non-normative)

# node . cloneNode([deep = false])

Returns a copy of *node*. If *deep* is true, the copy also includes the *node*'s descendants.

# node . isEqualNode(otherNode)

Returns whether *node* and *otherNode* have the same properties.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **cloning steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed *copy*, *node*, *document*, and an optional *clone children flag*, as indicated in the <u>clone</u> algorithm.

#### Note

HTML defines <u>cloning steps</u> for <u>script</u> and <u>input</u> elements. SVG ought to do the same for its <u>script</u> elements, but does not call this out at the moment.

To **clone** a *node*, with an optional *document* and *clone children flag*, run these steps:

- 1. If document is not given, let document be node's node document.
- 2. If *node* is an <u>element</u>, then:
  - Let copy be the result of <u>creating an element</u>, given document, node's <u>local name</u>, node's <u>namespace</u>, node's <u>namespace prefix</u>, and node's <u>is value</u>, with the synchronous custom elements flag unset.
  - 2. For each attribute in node's attribute list:
    - 1. Let *copyAttribute* be a <u>clone</u> of *attribute*.
    - 2. Append copyAttribute to copy.
- 3. Otherwise, let *copy* be a <u>node</u> that implements the same interfaces as *node*, and fulfills these additional requirements, switching on *node*:
  - → Document

those of node.

→ DocumentType

Set copy's name, public ID, and system ID, to those of node.

Attr

Set *copy*'s <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u>, <u>local name</u>, and <u>value</u>, to those of *node*.

- → Text

Set copy's data, to that of node.

→ ProcessingInstruction

Set *copy*'s <u>target</u> and <u>data</u> to those of *node*.

→ Any other node

\_

- 4. Set *copy*'s <u>node document</u> and *document* to *copy*, if *copy* is a <u>document</u>, and set *copy*'s <u>node document</u> to *document* otherwise.
- 5. Run any <u>cloning steps</u> defined for *node* in <u>other applicable specifications</u> and pass *copy*, *node*, *document* and the *clone children flag* if set, as parameters.
- 6. If the *clone children flag* is set, <u>clone</u> all the <u>children</u> of *node* and append them to *copy*, with *document* as specified and the *clone children flag* being set.
- 7. Return copy.

The cloneNode (deep) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this is a shadow root, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 2. Return a  $\underline{\text{clone}}$  of  $\underline{\text{this}}$ , with the clone children flag set if deep is true.

A <u>node</u> A **equals** a <u>node</u> B if all of the following conditions are true:

- A and B's <a href="mailto:nodeType">nodeType</a> attribute value is identical.
- The following are also equal, depending on A:
  - → DocumentType

Its name, public ID, and system ID.

**→ Element** 

Its <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u>, <u>local name</u>, and its <u>attribute</u> <u>list's size</u>.

Attr

Its <u>namespace</u>, <u>local name</u>, and <u>value</u>.

→ ProcessingInstruction

Its target and data.

- → Text

Its data.

→ Any other node

- If A is an <u>element</u>, each <u>attribute</u> in its <u>attribute list</u> has an <u>attribute</u> that equals an <u>attribute</u> in B's attribute list.
- A and B have the same number of children.
- Each child of A equals the child of B at the identical index.

The **isEqualNode**(otherNode) method, when invoked, must return true if otherNode is non-null and this equals otherNode, and false otherwise.

The **isSameNode**(*otherNode*) method, when invoked, must return true if *otherNode* is <u>this</u>, and false otherwise.

For web developers (non-normative)

# node . compareDocumentPosition(other)

Returns a bitmask indicating the position of *other* relative to *node*. These are the bits that can be set:

Node . DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_DISCONNECTED (1)

Set when node and other are not in the same tree.

Node . DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_PRECEDING (2)

Set when *other* is <u>preceding</u> *node*.

Node . <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_FOLLOWING</u> (4)

Set when other is following node.

Node . DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS (8)

Set when other is an ancestor of node.

Node . <u>DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY</u> (16, 10 in hexadecimal) Set when *other* is a descendant of *node*.

# node . contains(other)

Returns true if *other* is an <u>inclusive descendant</u> of *node*, and false otherwise.

These are the constants compareDocumentPosition() returns as mask:

- DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED (1);
- DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING (2);
- DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING (4);
- DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_CONTAINS (8);
- DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_CONTAINED\_BY (16, 10 in hexadecimal);
- DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_IMPLEMENTATION\_SPECIFIC (32, 20 in hexadecimal).

The compareDocumentPosition(other) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this is other, then return zero.
- 2. Let node1 be other and node2 be this.
- 3. Let attr1 and attr2 be null.
- 4. If node1 is an attribute, then set attr1 to node1 and node1 to attr1's element.
- 5. If node2 is an attribute, then:
  - 1. Set attr2 to node2 and node2 to attr2's element.
  - 2. If attr1 and node1 are non-null, and node2 is node1, then:

- 1. For each attr in node2's attribute list:
  - 1. If attr equals attr1, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> and <u>DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING</u>.
  - If attr equals attr2, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> and <u>DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING</u>.
- 6. If node1 or node2 is null, or node1's root is not node2's root, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_DISCONNECTED</u>, <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_IMPLEMENTATION\_SPECIFIC</u>, and either <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_PRECEDING</u> or <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_FOLLOWING</u>, with the constraint that this is to be consistent, together.

#### Note

Whether to return <a href="DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_PRECEDING">DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_FOLLOWING</a> is typically implemented via pointer comparison. In JavaScript implementations a cached Math.random() value can be used.

- 7. If node1 is an <u>ancestor</u> of node2 and attr1 is null, or node1 is node2 and attr2 is non-null, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_CONTAINS</u> to <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_PRECEDING</u>.
- 8. If node1 is a <u>descendant</u> of node2 and attr2 is null, or node1 is node2 and attr1 is non-null, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_CONTAINED\_BY</u> to <u>DOCUMENT\_POSITION\_FOLLOWING</u>.
- 9. If node1 is preceding node2, then return DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING.

### Note

Due to the way <u>attributes</u> are handled in this algorithm this results in a <u>node</u>'s <u>attributes</u> counting as <u>preceding</u> that <u>node</u>'s <u>children</u>, despite <u>attributes</u> not <u>participating</u> in a <u>tree</u>.

10. Return DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING.

The **contains** (*other*) method, when invoked, must return true if *other* is an <u>inclusive</u> <u>descendant</u> of <u>this</u>, and false otherwise (including when *other* is null).

To **locate a namespace prefix** for an *element* using *namespace*, run these steps:

- 1. If *element*'s <u>namespace</u> is *namespace* and its <u>namespace prefix</u> is non-null, then return its <u>namespace prefix</u>.
- 2. If element <u>has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace prefix</u> is "xmlns" and <u>value</u> is namespace, then return element's first such <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u>.
- 3. If element's <u>parent element</u> is not null, then return the result of running <u>locate</u> <u>a namespace prefix</u> on that <u>element</u> using <u>namespace</u>.
- 4. Return null.

To **locate a namespace** for a *node* using *prefix*, switch on *node*:

- 1. If its <u>namespace</u> is non-null and its <u>namespace prefix</u> is *prefix*, then return namespace.
- 2. If it <u>has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> is "xmlns", and <u>local name</u> is <u>prefix</u>, or if <u>prefix</u> is null and it <u>has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> is null, and <u>local name</u> is "xmlns", then return its <u>value</u> if it is not the empty string, and null otherwise.
- 3. If its parent element is null, then return null.
- 4. Return the result of running <u>locate a namespace</u> on its <u>parent</u> <u>element</u> using *prefix*.

### **→ Document**

- 1. If its document element is null, then return null.
- 2. Return the result of running <u>locate a namespace</u> on its <u>document</u> element using *prefix*.
- → DocumentType

Return null.

## → Attr

- 1. If its <u>element</u> is null, then return null.
- 2. Return the result of running <u>locate a namespace</u> on its <u>element</u> using *prefix*.

# → Any other node

- 1. If its <u>parent element</u> is null, then return null.
- 2. Return the result of running <u>locate a namespace</u> on its <u>parent</u> <u>element</u> using *prefix*.

The lookupPrefix(namespace) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is null or the empty string, then return null.
- 2. Switch on this:
  - **→ Element**

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for it using *namespace*.

## → Document

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for its <u>document</u> element, if its <u>document</u> element is non-null, and null otherwise.

- → DocumentType
- → DocumentFragment

Return null.

## → Attr

Return the result of locating a namespace prefix for its element, if

its element is non-null, and null otherwise.

### → Any other node

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for its <u>parent</u> <u>element</u>, if its <u>parent element</u> is non-null, and null otherwise.

The lookupNamespaceURI(prefix) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *prefix* is the empty string, then set it to null.
- 2. Return the result of running locate a namespace for this using prefix.

The isDefaultNamespace(namespace) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, then set it to null.
- 2. Let *defaultNamespace* be the result of running <u>locate a namespace</u> for <u>this</u> using null.
- 3. Return true if *defaultNamespace* is the same as *namespace*, and false otherwise.

The **insertBefore**(*node*, *child*) method, when invoked, must return the result of pre-inserting *node* into this before *child*.

The **appendChild**(**node**) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>appending</u> **node** to this.

The **replaceChild**(*node*, *child*) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>replacing</u> *child* with *node* within <u>this</u>.

The **removeChild**(*child*) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>preremoving</u> *child* from <u>this</u>.

The **list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName** for a <u>node</u> **root** is the <u>HTMLCollection</u> returned by the following algorithm:

- 1. If qualifiedName is "\*" (U+002A), return a <a href="https://example.com/HTMLCollection">HTMLCollection</a> rooted at root, whose filter matches only <a href="https://example.com/descendant\_elements">descendant\_elements</a>.
- Otherwise, if root's <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, return a
   <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches the following <u>descendant</u> <u>elements</u>:
  - Whose <u>namespace</u> is the <u>HTML namespace</u> and whose <u>qualified name</u> is *qualifiedName*, in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
  - Whose <u>namespace</u> is *not* the <u>HTML namespace</u> and whose <u>qualified</u> <u>name</u> is *qualifiedName*.

When invoked with the same argument, and as long as *root*'s <u>node document</u>'s <u>type</u> has not changed, the same <u>HTMLCollection</u> object may be returned as returned by an earlier call.

The **list of elements with namespace namespace and local name localName** for a node **root** is the **HTMLCollection** returned by the following algorithm:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. If both *namespace* and *localName* are "\*" (U+002A), return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at *root*, whose filter matches <u>descendant</u> elements.
- 3. Otherwise, if *namespace* is "\*" (U+002A), return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at *root*, whose filter matches <u>descendant</u> <u>elements</u> whose <u>local name</u> is *localName*.
- 4. Otherwise, if *localName* is "\*" (U+002A), return a <a href="https://example.com/HTMLCollection"><u>HTMLCollection</u></a> rooted at root, whose filter matches <a href="https://example.com/descendant"><u>descendant</u></a> <a href="elements"><u>elements</u></a> whose <a href="mailto:namespace"><u>namespace</u></a> is <a href="mailto:namespace">namespace</a>.
- 5. Otherwise, return a <a href="https://example.com/HTMLCollection">HTMLCollection</a> rooted at root, whose filter matches descendant elements whose <a href="https://example.com/namespace">namespace</a> is namespace and <a href="https://example.com/namespace">localName</a>.

When invoked with the same arguments, the same <u>HTMLCollection</u> object may be returned as returned by an earlier call.

The **list of elements with class names** *classNames* for a <u>node</u> *root* is the <u>HTMLCollection</u> returned by the following algorithm:

- 1. Let *classes* be the result of running the <u>ordered set parser</u> on *classNames*.
- 2. If *classes* is the empty set, return an empty HTMLCollection.
- 3. Return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at *root*, whose filter matches <u>descendant</u> <u>elements</u> that have all their <u>classes</u> in *classes*.

The comparisons for the <u>classes</u> must be done in an <u>ASCII case-insensitive</u> manner if <u>root</u>'s <u>node document</u>'s <u>mode</u> is "quirks", and in an <u>identical to</u> manner otherwise.

When invoked with the same argument, the same <u>HTMLCollection</u> object may be returned as returned by an earlier call.

# § 4.5. Interface Document

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Document : Node {
   constructor();

[SameObject] readonly attribute DOMImplementation
implementation;
   readonly attribute USVString URL;
   readonly attribute USVString documentURI;
   readonly attribute DOMString compatMode;
   readonly attribute DOMString characterSet;
   readonly attribute DOMString charset; // legacy alias of
   .characterSet
   readonly attribute DOMString inputEncoding; // legacy alias
```

```
of .characterSet
  readonly attribute DOMString contentType;
  readonly attribute DocumentType? doctype;
  readonly attribute Element? documentElement;
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagName(DOMString
qualifiedName):
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString localName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByClassName(DOMString classNames);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElement(DOMString
localName, optional (DOMString or ElementCreationOptions)
options = {});
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElementNS(DOMString?
namespace, DOMString qualifiedName, optional (DOMString or
ElementCreationOptions) options = {});
  [NewObject] DocumentFragment createDocumentFragment();
  [NewObject] Text createTextNode(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] CDATASection createCDATASection(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] Comment createComment(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] ProcessingInstruction
createProcessingInstruction(DOMString target, DOMString data);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node importNode(Node node, optional
boolean deep = false);
  [CEReactions] Node adoptNode(Node node);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttribute(DOMString localName);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString qualifiedName);
  [NewObject] Event createEvent(DOMString interface); //
legacy
  [NewObject] Range createRange();
  // NodeFilter.SHOW ALL = 0xFFFFFFF
  [NewObject] NodeIterator createNodeIterator(Node root,
optional unsigned long whatToShow = 0xFFFFFFFF, optional
NodeFilter? filter = null);
  [NewObject] <u>TreeWalker</u> <u>createTreeWalker</u>(Node root, optional
unsigned long whatToShow = 0xFFFFFFFF, optional NodeFilter?
filter = null);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface XMLDocument : Document {};
dictionary ElementCreationOptions {
  DOMString is;
};
```

<u>Document</u> <u>nodes</u> are simply known as **documents**.

Each document has an associated encoding (an encoding), content type (a string),

URL (a URL), origin (an origin), type ("xml" or "html"), and mode ("no-quirks",
"quirks", or "limited-quirks"). [ENCODING] [URL] [HTML]

Unless stated otherwise, a <u>document</u>'s <u>encoding</u> is the <u>utf-8 encoding</u>, <u>content type</u> is "application/xml", <u>URL</u> is "about:blank", <u>origin</u> is an <u>opaque origin</u>, <u>type</u> is "xml", and its mode is "no-quirks".

A <u>document</u> is said to be an **XML document** if its <u>type</u> is "xml", and an **HTML document** otherwise. Whether a <u>document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u> or an <u>XML</u> document affects the behavior of certain APIs.

A <u>document</u> is said to be in **no-quirks mode** if its <u>mode</u> is "no-quirks", **quirks mode** if its <u>mode</u> is "quirks", and **limited-quirks mode** if its <u>mode</u> is "limited-quirks".

#### Note

The <u>mode</u> is only ever changed from the default for <u>documents</u> created by the <u>HTML parser</u> based on the presence, absence, or value of the DOCTYPE string, and by a new <u>browsing context</u> (initial "about:blank"). [HTML]

<u>No-quirks mode</u> was originally known as "standards mode" and <u>limited-quirks</u> <u>mode</u> was once known as "almost standards mode". They have been renamed because their details are now defined by standards. (And because Ian Hickson vetoed their original names on the basis that they are nonsensical.)

A <u>document</u>'s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm, given an <u>event</u>, returns null if <u>event</u>'s <u>type</u> attribute value is "load" or <u>document</u> does not have a <u>browsing context</u>, and the <u>document</u>'s <u>relevant global object</u> otherwise.

For web developers (non-normative)

document = new Document()

Returns a new document.

document . implementation

Returns document's <a href="DOMImplementation">DOMImplementation</a> object.

document . URL

document . documentURI

Returns document's URL.

document . compatMode

Returns the string "BackCompat" if *document*'s <u>mode</u> is "quirks", and "CSS1Compat" otherwise.

document . characterSet

Returns document's encoding.

document . contentType

Returns document's content type.

The **Document()** constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>document</u> whose <u>origin</u> is the <u>origin</u> of <u>current global object's associated Document</u>. [HTML]

#### Note

Unlike <a href="mailto:createDocument">createDocument</a>(), this constructor does not return an <a href="mailto:XMLDocument">XMLDocument</a>

The **implementation** attribute's getter must return the <u>DOMImplementation</u> object that is associated with the document.

The **URL** attribute's getter and **documentURI** attribute's getter must return the <u>URL</u>, serialized.

The **compatMode** attribute's getter must return "BackCompat" if <u>this</u>'s <u>mode</u> is "quirks", and "CSS1Compat" otherwise.

The **characterSet** attribute's getter, **charset** attribute's getter, and **inputEncoding** attribute's getter, must return this's encoding's name.

The **contentType** attribute's getter must return the <u>content type</u>.

For web developers (non-normative)

# document . doctype

Returns the <u>doctype</u> or null if there is none.

### document . documentElement

Returns the document element.

# collection = document . getElementsByTagName(qualifiedName)

If qualifiedName is "\*" returns a <a href="https://example.com/html/HTMLCollection">HTMLCollection</a> of all <a href="mailto:descendant">descendant</a> elements.

# collection = document . getElementsByTagNameNS(namespace, localName)

If *namespace* and *localName* are "\*" returns a <a href="https://example.com/HTMLCollection">HTMLCollection</a> of all <a href="https://example.com/descendant\_elements">descendant\_elements</a>.

If only *namespace* is "\*" returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of all <u>descendant</u> <u>elements</u> whose <u>local name</u> is *localName*.

If only *localName* is "\*" returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of all <u>descendant</u> <u>elements</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is *namespace*.

Otherwise, returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of all <u>descendant elements</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u> and <u>local name</u> is <u>localName</u>.

# collection = document . getElementsByClassName(classNames)

# collection = element . getElementsByClassName(classNames)

Returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of the <u>elements</u> in the object on which the method was invoked (a <u>document</u> or an <u>element</u>) that have all the classes given by *classNames*. The *classNames* argument is interpreted as a space-separated list of classes.

The **doctype** attribute's getter must return the <u>child</u> of the <u>document</u> that is a doctype, and null otherwise.

The documentElement attribute's getter must return the document element.

The **getElementsByTagName**(**qualifiedName**) method, when invoked, must return the list of elements with qualified name **qualifiedName** for this.

Thus, in an <u>HTML document</u>, document.getElementsByTagName("F00") will match <F00> elements that are not in the <u>HTML namespace</u>, and <f00> elements that are in the <u>HTML namespace</u>, but not <F00> elements that are in the <u>HTML namespace</u>.

The **getElementsByTagNameNS**(*namespace*, *localName*) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with namespace namespace</u> and <u>local name localName</u> for this.

The **getElementsByClassName**(*classNames*) method, when invoked, must return the list of elements with class names *classNames* for this.

# Example

Given the following XHTML fragment:

```
<div id="example">

</div>
```

#### A call to

document.getElementById("example").getElementsByClassName("aaa") would return a <a href="https://document.getElementById("example").getElementsByClassName("aaa") would return a <a href="https://document.getElementById("example").getElementsById

A call to getElementsByClassName("ccc bbb") would only return one node, however, namely p3. A call to document.getElementById("example").getElementsByClassName("bbb ccc ") would return the same thing.

A call to getElementsByClassName("aaa,bbb") would return no nodes; none of the elements above are in the aaa,bbb class.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
element = document . createElement(localName [, options])
```

Returns an <u>element</u> with *localName* as <u>local name</u> (if *document* is an <u>HTML</u> <u>document</u>, *localName* gets lowercased). The <u>element</u>'s <u>namespace</u> is the <u>HTML namespace</u> when *document* is an <u>HTML document</u> or *document*'s <u>content type</u> is "application/xhtml+xml", and null otherwise.

If *localName* does not match the <u>Name</u> production an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> will be thrown.

When supplied, *options*'s <u>is</u> can be used to create a <u>customized built-in</u> <u>element</u>.

```
element = document . createElementNS(namespace, qualifiedName [,
options])
```

Returns an <u>element</u> with <u>namespace</u> <u>namespace</u>. Its <u>namespace prefix</u> will be everything before ":" (U+003E) in <u>qualifiedName</u> or null. Its <u>local name</u> will be everything after ":" (U+003E) in <u>qualifiedName</u> or <u>qualifiedName</u>.

If qualifiedName does not match the QName production an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException will be thrown.

If one of the following conditions is true a "NamespaceError"

DOMException will be thrown:

- Namespace prefix is not null and namespace is the empty string.
- Namespace prefix is "xml" and namespace is not the XML namespace.
- qualifiedName or <u>namespace prefix</u> is "xmlns" and <u>namespace</u> is not the XMLNS namespace.
- namespace is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u> and neither *qualifiedName* nor namespace prefix is "xmlns".

When supplied, *options*'s <u>is</u> can be used to create a <u>customized built-in</u> element.

documentFragment = document . createDocumentFragment()

Returns a DocumentFragment node.

text = document . createTextNode(data)

Returns a <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>data</u> is *data*.

text = document . createCDATASection(data)

Returns a <u>CDATASection</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>data</u> is <u>data</u>.

comment = document . createComment(data)

Returns a Comment node whose data is data.

processingInstruction = document .
createProcessingInstruction(target, data)

Returns a <a href="ProcessingInstruction">ProcessingInstruction</a> node whose <a href="target">target</a> and <a href="mailto:data">data</a> is <a href="mailto:data">data</a>. If <a href="target">target</a> does not match the <a href="mailto:Name">Name</a> production an <a href="mailto:"InvalidCharacterError"</a> <a href="mailto:DOMException">DOMException</a> will be thrown. If <a href="mailto:data">data</a> contains <a href="mailto:">"?>" an "InvalidCharacterError"</a> <a href="mailto:DOMException">DOMException</a> will be thrown.

The **element interface** for any *name* and *namespace* is <u>Element</u>, unless stated otherwise.

### Note

The HTML Standard will e.g. define that for html and the <u>HTML namespace</u>, the <u>HTMLHtmlElement</u> interface is used. [HTML]

The **createElement**(*localName*, *options*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *localName* does not match the <u>Name</u> production, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *localName* to *localName* in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 3. Let is be null.
- 4. If options is a dictionary and options's is present, then set is to it.
- 5. Let namespace be the <u>HTML namespace</u>, if <u>this</u> is an <u>HTML document</u> or <u>this</u>'s content type is "application/xhtml+xml", and null otherwise.
- 6. Return the result of <u>creating an element</u> given <u>this</u>, *localName*, *namespace*, null, *is*, and with the *synchronous custom elements* flag set.

The **internal createElementNS steps**, given document, namespace, qualifiedName, and options, are as follows:

- 1. Let *namespace*, *prefix*, and *localName* be the result of passing *namespace* and *qualifiedName* to <u>validate</u> and <u>extract</u>.
- 2. Let is be null.
- 3. If options is a dictionary and options's is is present, then set is to it.
- 4. Return the result of <u>creating an element</u> given *document*, *localName*, *namespace*, *prefix*, *is*, and with the *synchronous custom elements* flag set.

The **createElementNS**(*namespace*, *qualifiedName*, *options*) method, when invoked, must return the result of running the <u>internal createElementNS steps</u>, given <u>this</u>, *namespace*, *qualifiedName*, and *options*.

### Note

<u>createElement()</u> and <u>createElementNS()</u>'s options parameter is allowed to be a string for web compatibility.

The **createDocumentFragment()** method, when invoked, must return a new **DocumentFragment** node with its node document set to this.

The **createTextNode**(*data*) method, when invoked, must return a new <u>Text node</u> with its <u>data</u> set to *data* and <u>node document</u> set to <u>this</u>.

### Note

No check is performed that data consists of characters that match the <a href="Char">Char</a> production.

The createCDATASection(data) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- If <u>this</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- If data contains the string "]]>", then throw an "InvalidCharacterError"
   DOMException.
- 3. Return a new <u>CDATASection</u> <u>node</u> with its <u>data</u> set to <u>data</u> and <u>node document</u> set to <u>this</u>.

The **createComment**(*data*) method, when invoked, must return a new <u>Comment</u> <u>node</u> with its <u>data</u> set to <u>data</u> and <u>node document</u> set to <u>this</u>.

### Note

No check is performed that data consists of characters that match the <a href="Char">Char</a> production or that it contains two adjacent hyphens or ends with a hyphen.

The **createProcessingInstruction**(*target*, *data*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *target* does not match the <u>Name</u> production, then <u>throw</u> an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. If data contains the string "?>", then throw an "InvalidCharacterError"

### DOMException.

3. Return a new <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> <u>node</u>, with <u>target</u> set to <u>target</u>, <u>data</u> set to <u>data</u>, and node document set to this.

### Note

No check is performed that target contains "xml" or ":", or that data contains characters that match the <a href="Char">Char</a> production.

For web developers (non-normative)

# clone = document . importNode(node [, deep = false])

Returns a copy of *node*. If *deep* is true, the copy also includes the *node*'s <u>descendants</u>.

If node is a <u>document</u> or a <u>shadow root</u>, throws a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

# node = document . adoptNode(node)

Moves node from another document and returns it.

If node is a <u>document</u>, throws a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> or, if node is a <u>shadow root</u>, throws a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

The importNode(node, deep) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *node* is a <u>document</u> or <u>shadow root</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Return a <u>clone</u> of *node*, with <u>this</u> and the *clone children flag* set if *deep* is true.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **adopting steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed *node* and *oldDocument*, as indicated in the <u>adopt</u> algorithm.

To **adopt** a *node* into a *document*, run these steps:

- 1. Let *oldDocument* be *node*'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. If node's <u>parent</u> is non-null, then <u>remove</u> node.
- 3. If document is not oldDocument, then:
  - 1. For each *inclusiveDescendant* in *node*'s <u>shadow-including inclusive</u> <u>descendants</u>:
    - 1. Set inclusiveDescendant's node document to document.
    - If inclusiveDescendant is an <u>element</u>, then set the <u>node</u> <u>document</u> of each <u>attribute</u> in inclusiveDescendant's <u>attribute</u> <u>list</u> to document.
  - 2. For each *inclusiveDescendant* in *node*'s <u>shadow-including inclusive</u> <u>descendants</u> that is <u>custom</u>, <u>enqueue a custom element callback</u> <u>reaction</u> with *inclusiveDescendant*, callback name "adoptedCallback", and an argument list containing *oldDocument* and *document*.
  - 3. For each *inclusiveDescendant* in *node*'s <u>shadow-including inclusive</u> <u>descendants</u>, in <u>shadow-including tree order</u>, run the <u>adopting steps</u> with *inclusiveDescendant* and *oldDocument*.

The adoptNode(node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If node is a document, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 2. If *node* is a <u>shadow root</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If node is a DocumentFragment node whose host is non-null, then return.
- 4. Adopt node into this.
- 5. Return node.

The createAttribute(localName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *localName* does not match the <u>Name</u> production in XML, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *localName* to *localName* in <u>ASCII</u> lowercase.
- 3. Return a new <u>attribute</u> whose <u>local name</u> is *localName* and <u>node document</u> is this.

The **createAttributeNS**(*namespace*, *qualifiedName*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *namespace*, *prefix*, and *localName* be the result of passing *namespace* and *qualifiedName* to <u>validate and extract</u>.
- 2. Return a new <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> is <u>prefix</u>, local name is <u>localName</u>, and node document is this.

The **createEvent(interface)** method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let constructor be null.
- 2. If *interface* is an <u>ASCII case-insensitive</u> match for any of the strings in the first column in the following table, then set *constructor* to the interface in the second column on the same row as the matching string:

String	Interface	Notes
"beforeunloadevent"	<u>BeforeUnloadEvent</u>	[HTML]
"compositionevent"	CompositionEvent	[ <u>UIEVENTS</u> ]
"customevent"	<u>CustomEvent</u>	
"devicemotionevent"	<u>DeviceMotionEvent</u>	[DEVICE-ORIENTATION]
"deviceorientationevent"	<pre>DeviceOrientationEvent</pre>	
"dragevent"	<u>DragEvent</u>	[HTML]
"event"	<u>Event</u>	
"events"		
"focusevent"	<u>FocusEvent</u>	[ <u>UIEVENTS</u> ]
"hashchangeevent"	<u>HashChangeEvent</u>	[HTML]
"htmlevents"	<u>Event</u>	
"keyboardevent"	<u>KeyboardEvent</u>	[ <u>UIEVENTS</u> ]
"messageevent"	<u>MessageEvent</u>	[HTML]

String	Interface	Notes
"mouseevent"	<u>MouseEvent</u>	[ <u>UIEVENTS</u> ]
"mouseevents"		
"storageevent"	<u>StorageEvent</u>	[HTML]
"svgevents"	<u>Event</u>	
"textevent"	CompositionEvent	[UIEVENTS]
"touchevent"	<u>TouchEvent</u>	[TOUCH-EVENTS]
"uievent"	<u>UIEvent</u>	[ <u>UIEVENTS</u> ]
"uievents"		

- 3. If constructor is null, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 4. If the interface indicated by *constructor* is not exposed on the <u>relevant global</u> <u>object</u> of <u>this</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

### Note

Typically user agents disable support for touch events in some configurations, in which case this clause would be triggered for the interface TouchEvent.

- 5. Let event be the result of creating an event given constructor.
- 6. Initialize event's type attribute to the empty string.
- 7. Initialize *event*'s <u>timeStamp</u> attribute to a <u>DOMHighResTimeStamp</u> representing the high resolution time from the time origin to now.
- 8. Initialize event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to false.
- 9. Unset event's initialized flag.
- 10. Return event.

## Note

**Event** constructors ought to be used instead.

The **createRange()** method, when invoked, must return a new <u>live range</u> with (<u>this</u>, 0) as its <u>start</u> an <u>end</u>.

### Note

The Range() constructor can be used instead.

The **createNodeIterator**(*root*, *whatToShow*, *filter*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let iterator be a new NodeIterator object.
- 2. Set *iterator*'s <u>root</u> and *iterator*'s <u>reference</u> to *root*.
- 3. Set *iterator*'s <u>pointer before reference</u> to true.
- 4. Set iterator's whatToShow to whatToShow.
- 5. Set iterator's filter to filter.

6. Return iterator.

The createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow, filter) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let walker be a new TreeWalker object.
- 2. Set walker's root and walker's current to root.
- 3. Set walker's whatToShow to whatToShow.
- 4. Set walker's filter to filter.
- 5. Return walker.

# § 4.5.1. Interface DOMImplementation

User agents must create a <u>DOMImplementation</u> object whenever a <u>document</u> is created and associate it with that <u>document</u>.

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMImplementation {
    [NewObject] DocumentType createDocumentType(DOMString)
qualifiedName, DOMString publicId, DOMString systemId);
    [NewObject] XMLDocument createDocument(DOMString? namespace,
    [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString qualifiedName, optional
    DocumentType? doctype = null);
    [NewObject] Document createHTMLDocument(optional DOMString)
title);

    boolean hasFeature(); // useless; always returns true
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
doctype = document . implementation .
createDocumentType(qualifiedName, publicId, systemId)
```

Returns a <u>doctype</u>, with the given *qualifiedName*, *publicId*, and *systemId*. If *qualifiedName* does not match the <u>Name</u> production, an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> is thrown, and if it does not match the <u>QName</u> production, a "<u>NamespaceError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> is thrown.

```
doc = document . implementation . createDocument(namespace,
    qualifiedName [, doctype = null])
```

Returns an <u>XMLDocument</u>, with a <u>document element</u> whose <u>local name</u> is qualifiedName and whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u> (unless <u>qualifiedName</u> is the empty string), and with <u>doctype</u>, if it is given, as its <u>doctype</u>.

This method throws the same exceptions as the <u>createElementNS()</u> method, when invoked with *namespace* and *qualifiedName*.

```
doc = document . implementation . createHTMLDocument([title])
Returns a document, with a basic tree already constructed including a
title element, unless the title argument is omitted.
```

invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Validate qualifiedName.
- 2. Return a new <u>doctype</u>, with *qualifiedName* as its <u>name</u>, *publicId* as its <u>public ID</u>, and *systemId* as its <u>system ID</u>, and with its <u>node document</u> set to the associated <u>document</u> of this.

#### Note

No check is performed that publicld code points match the <a href="PublidChar">PublidChar</a> production or that systemId does not contain both a "" and a "".

The createDocument(namespace, qualifiedName, doctype) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let document be a new XMLDocument.
- 2. Let element be null.
- 3. If *qualifiedName* is not the empty string, then set *element* to the result of running the <u>internal createElementNS</u> steps, given *document*, *namespace*, *qualifiedName*, and an empty dictionary.
- 4. If doctype is non-null, append doctype to document.
- 5. If element is non-null, append element to document.
- 6. document's origin is this's associated document's origin.
- 7. document's content type is determined by namespace:
  - → <u>HTML namespace</u>

    application/xhtml+xml
  - → SVG namespace

image/svg+xml

→ Any other namespace

application/xml

8. Return document.

The createHTMLDocument(title) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *doc* be a new <u>document</u> that is an <u>HTML document</u>.
- 2. Set doc's content type to "text/html".
- 3. <u>Append</u> a new <u>doctype</u>, with "html" as its <u>name</u> and with its <u>node document</u> set to *doc*, to *doc*.
- 4. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given *doc*, <u>html</u>, and the <u>HTML</u> <u>namespace</u>, to *doc*.
- 5. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given *doc*, <u>head</u>, and the <u>HTML</u> <u>namespace</u>, to the <u>html</u> element created earlier.
- 6. If title is given:
  - 1. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given *doc*, <u>title</u>, and the <u>HTML namespace</u>, to the <u>head</u> element created earlier.

- 2. <u>Append</u> a new <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, with its <u>data</u> set to *title* (which could be the empty string) and its <u>node document</u> set to *doc*, to the <u>title</u> element created earlier.
- 7. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given <u>doc</u>, <u>body</u>, and the <u>HTML</u> namespace, to the <u>html</u> element created earlier.
- 8. doc's origin is this's associated document's origin.
- 9. Return doc.

The hasFeature() method, when invoked, must return true.

Note

<u>hasFeature()</u> originally would report whether the user agent claimed to support a given DOM feature, but experience proved it was not nearly as reliable or granular as simply checking whether the desired objects, attributes, or methods existed. As such, it is no longer to be used, but continues to exist (and simply returns true) so that old pages don't stop working.

# § 4.6. Interface <u>DocumentType</u>

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface DocumentType : Node {
  readonly attribute DOMString name;
  readonly attribute DOMString publicId;
  readonly attribute DOMString systemId;
};
```

DocumentType nodes are simply known as doctypes.

<u>Doctypes</u> have an associated **name**, **public ID**, and **system ID**.

When a <u>doctype</u> is created, its <u>name</u> is always given. Unless explicitly given when a <u>doctype</u> is created, its <u>public ID</u> and <u>system ID</u> are the empty string.

The name attribute's getter must return this's name.

The publicId attribute's getter must return this's public ID.

The **systemId** attribute's getter must return this's system ID.

# 4.7. Interface DocumentFragment

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface DocumentFragment : Node {
  constructor();
};
```

A <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> has an associated **host** (null or an <u>element</u> in a different

node tree). It is null unless otherwise stated.

An object A is a **host-including inclusive ancestor** of an object B, if either A is an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of B, or if B's <u>root</u> has a non-null <u>host</u> and A is a <u>host-including</u> <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of B's <u>root</u>'s host.

### Note

The <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>'s <u>host</u> concept is useful for HTML's <u>template</u> element and for shadow roots, and impacts the pre-insert and replace algorithms.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
tree = new DocumentFragment()
Returns a new DocumentFragment node.
```

The **DocumentFragment()** constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> node whose <u>node document</u> is <u>current global object</u>'s <u>associated</u> <u>Document</u>.

# § 4.8. Interface ShadowRoot

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface ShadowRoot : DocumentFragment {
  readonly attribute ShadowRootMode mode;
  readonly attribute Element host;
  attribute EventHandler onslotchange;
};
enum ShadowRootMode { "open", "closed" };
```

<u>ShadowRoot</u> <u>nodes</u> are simply known as **shadow roots**.

<u>Shadow roots</u> have an associated **mode** ("open" or "closed").

Shadow roots have an associated delegates focus. It is initially set to false.

<u>Shadow roots</u> have an associated **available to element internals**. It is initially set to false.

Shadow roots's associated host is never null.

A <u>shadow root</u>'s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm, given an <u>event</u>, returns null if <u>event</u>'s <u>composed flag</u> is unset and <u>shadow root</u> is the <u>root</u> of <u>event</u>'s <u>path</u>'s first struct's <u>invocation target</u>, and <u>shadow root</u>'s <u>host</u> otherwise.

The mode attribute's getter must return this's mode.

The **host** attribute's getter must return this's host.

The **onslotchange** attribute is an <u>event handler IDL attribute</u> for the **onslotchange** <u>event handler</u>, whose <u>event handler event type</u> is <u>slotchange</u>.

In **shadow-including tree order** is <u>shadow-including preorder</u>, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of a <u>node tree</u>. **Shadow-including preorder**, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of a <u>node tree</u> tree is preorder, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of tree, with for each <u>shadow host</u> encountered in tree, <u>shadow-including preorder</u>, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of that <u>element</u>'s <u>shadow</u> root's node tree just after it is encountered.

The **shadow-including root** of an object is its <u>root</u>'s <u>host</u>'s <u>shadow-including root</u>, if the object's <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and its <u>root</u> otherwise.

An object A is a **shadow-including descendant** of an object B, if A is a <u>descendant</u> of B, or A's <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u> and A's <u>root</u>'s <u>host</u> is a <u>shadow-including inclusive</u> descendant of B.

A **shadow-including inclusive descendant** is an object or one of its <u>shadow-including</u> descendants.

An object *A* is a **shadow-including ancestor** of an object *B*, if and only if *B* is a shadow-including descendant of *A*.

A **shadow-including inclusive ancestor** is an object or one of its <u>shadow-including</u> <u>ancestors</u>.

A <u>node</u> A is **closed-shadow-hidden** from a <u>node</u> B if all of the following conditions are true:

- A's root is a shadow root.
- A's root is not a shadow-including inclusive ancestor of B.
- A's <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u> whose <u>mode</u> is "closed" or A's <u>root</u>'s <u>host</u> is <u>closed-shadow-hidden</u> from B.

To **retarget** an object *A* against an object *B*, repeat these steps until they return an object:

- 1. If one of the following is true
  - A is not a node
  - A's root is not a shadow root
  - B is a node and A's root is a shadow-including inclusive ancestor of B

then return A.

2. Set A to A's root's host.

### Note

The <u>retargeting</u> algorithm is used by <u>event dispatch</u> as well as other specifications, such as Fullscreen. [<u>FULLSCREEN</u>]

## 4.9. Interface Element

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Element : Node {
  readonly attribute DOMString? namespaceURI;
  readonly attribute DOMString? prefix;
```

```
readonly attribute <a href="DOMString localName">DOMString localName</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString tagName;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString id;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString className;
  [SameObject, PutForwards=value] readonly attribute
DOMTokenList classList;
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] attribute DOMString slot;
  boolean hasAttributes();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute NamedNodeMap attributes;
  sequence<DOMString> getAttributeNames();
  DOMString? getAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName);
  DOMString? getAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  [CEReactions] undefined setAttribute(DOMString
qualifiedName, DOMString value);
  [CEReactions] undefined setAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString value);
  [CEReactions] undefined removeAttribute(DOMString
qualifiedName);
  [CEReactions] undefined removeAttributeNS(DOMString?
namespace, DOMString localName);
  [CEReactions] boolean toggleAttribute(DOMString
qualifiedName, optional boolean force);
  boolean hasAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName);
  boolean hasAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  Attr? getAttributeNode(DOMString qualifiedName);
  Attr? getAttributeNodeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNode(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNodeNS(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr removeAttributeNode(Attr attr);
  ShadowRoot attachShadow(ShadowRootInit init);
  readonly attribute <u>ShadowRoot</u>? <u>shadowRoot</u>;
  Element? closest(DOMString selectors);
  boolean matches(DOMString selectors);
  boolean webkitMatchesSelector(DOMString selectors); //
legacy alias of .matches
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagName(DOMString
qualifiedName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString localName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByClassName(DOMString classNames);
  [CEReactions] Element? insertAdjacentElement(DOMString
where, Element element); // legacy
  undefined insertAdjacentText(DOMString where, DOMString
data); // legacy
};
```

```
dictionary ShadowRootInit {
  required ShadowRootMode mode;
  boolean delegatesFocus = false;
};
```

**Element** nodes are simply known as **elements**.

<u>Elements</u> have an associated **namespace**, **namespace prefix**, **local name**, **custom element state**, **custom element definition**, **is value**. When an <u>element</u> is <u>created</u>, all of these values are initialized.

An <u>element</u>'s <u>custom element state</u> is one of "undefined", "failed", "uncustomized", "precustomized", or "custom". An <u>element</u> whose <u>custom element state</u> is "uncustomized" or "custom" is said to be **defined**. An <u>element</u> whose <u>custom</u> <u>element state</u> is "custom" is said to be **custom**.

#### Note

Whether or not an element is <u>defined</u> is used to determine the behavior of the <u>:defined</u> pseudo-class. Whether or not an element is <u>custom</u> is used to determine the behavior of the <u>mutation algorithms</u>. The "failed" and "precustomized" states are used to ensure that if a <u>custom element constructor</u> fails to execute correctly the first time, it is not executed again by an <u>upgrade</u>.

## Example

The following code illustrates elements in each of these four states:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<script>
 window.customElements.define("sw-rey", class extends
HTMLElement {})
 window.customElements.define("sw-finn", class extends
HTMLElement {}, { extends: "p" })
 window.customElements.define("sw-kylo", class extends
HTMLElement {
   constructor() {
     // super() intentionally omitted for this example
   }
 })
</script>
<!-- "undefined" (not defined, not custom) -->
<sw-han></sw-han>
<!-- "failed" (not defined, not custom) -->
<sw-kylo></sw-kylo>
<!-- "uncustomized" (defined, not custom) -->
<asdf></asdf>
<!-- "custom" (defined, custom) -->
```

```
<sw-rey></sw-rey>
```

<u>Elements</u> also have an associated **shadow root** (null or a <u>shadow root</u>). It is null unless otherwise stated. An element is a **shadow host** if its shadow root is non-null.

An <u>element</u>'s **qualified name** is its <u>local name</u> if its <u>namespace prefix</u> is null, and its <u>namespace prefix</u>, followed by ":", followed by its <u>local name</u>, otherwise.

An <u>element</u>'s **HTML-uppercased qualified name** is the return value of these steps:

- 1. Let qualifiedName be this's qualified name.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *qualifiedName* to *qualifiedName* in ASCII uppercase.
- 3. Return qualifiedName.

### Note

User agents could optimize <u>qualified name</u> and <u>HTML-uppercased qualified name</u> by storing them in internal slots.

To **create an element**, given a *document*, *localName*, *namespace*, and optional *prefix*, *is*, and *synchronous custom elements flag*, run these steps:

- 1. If prefix was not given, let prefix be null.
- 2. If is was not given, let is be null.
- 3. Let result be null.
- 4. Let *definition* be the result of <u>looking up a custom element definition</u> given *document, namespace, localName,* and *is.*
- 5. If *definition* is non-null, and *definition*'s <u>name</u> is not equal to its <u>local name</u> (i.e., *definition* represents a <u>customized built-in element</u>), then:
  - 1. Let *interface* be the <u>element interface</u> for *localName* and the <u>HTML</u> <u>namespace</u>.
  - Set result to a new element that implements interface, with no attributes, namespace set to the HTML namespace, namespace prefix set to prefix, local name set to localName, custom element state set to "undefined", custom element definition set to null, is value set to is, and node document set to document.
  - 3. If the *synchronous custom elements flag* is set, then run this step while catching any exceptions:
    - 1. <u>Upgrade</u> element using definition.

If this step threw an exception, then:

- 1. Report the exception.
- 2. Set result's custom element state to "failed".
- 4. Otherwise, <u>enqueue a custom element upgrade reaction</u> given *result* and *definition*.

- 6. Otherwise, if definition is non-null, then:
  - 1. If the *synchronous custom elements flag* is set, then run these steps while catching any exceptions:
    - 1. Let C be definition's constructor.
    - 2. Set *result* to the result of constructing *C*, with no arguments.
    - 3. Assert: *result*'s <u>custom element state</u> and <u>custom element</u> definition are initialized.
    - 4. Assert: result's namespace is the HTML namespace.

#### Note

- 5. If result's <u>attribute list</u> is not <u>empty</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- If result has <u>children</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- If result's parent is not null, then throw a "NotSupportedError"
   DOMException.
- 8. If result's <u>node document</u> is not document, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 9. If result's <u>local name</u> is not equal to *localName*, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 10. Set result's namespace prefix to prefix.
- 11. Set result's is value to null.

If any of these steps threw an exception, then:

- 1. Report the exception.
- 2. Set result to a new element that implements the HTMLUnknownElement interface, with no attributes, namespace set to the HTML namespace, namespace prefix set to prefix, local name set to localName, custom element state set to "failed", custom element definition set to null, is value set to null, and node document set to document.

### 2. Otherwise:

- 1. Set result to a new <u>element</u> that implements the <u>HTMLElement</u> interface, with no attributes, <u>namespace</u> set to the <u>HTML</u> <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> set to <u>prefix</u>, <u>local name</u> set to <u>localName</u>, <u>custom element state</u> set to "undefined", <u>custom element definition</u> set to null, <u>is value</u> set to null, and <u>node</u> document set to <u>document</u>.
- 2. <u>Enqueue a custom element upgrade reaction</u> given *result* and *definition*.

## 7. Otherwise:

- 1. Let interface be the element interface for localName and namespace.
- 2. Set result to a new <u>element</u> that implements interface, with no attributes, <u>namespace</u> set to <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> set to <u>prefix</u>, <u>local name</u> set to <u>localName</u>, <u>custom element state</u> set to "uncustomized", <u>custom element definition</u> set to null, <u>is value</u> set to is, and <u>node document</u> set to <u>document</u>.
- 3. If namespace is the <a href="https://https:
- 8. Return result.

<u>Elements</u> also have an **attribute list**, which is a <u>list</u> exposed through a <u>NamedNodeMap</u>. Unless explicitly given when an <u>element</u> is created, its <u>attribute list</u> <u>is empty</u>.

An element has an attribute A if its attribute list contains A.

This and <u>other specifications</u> may define **attribute change steps** for <u>elements</u>. The algorithm is passed *element*, *localName*, *oldValue*, *value*, and *namespace*.

To **handle attribute changes** for an <u>attribute</u> *attribute* with *element*, *oldValue*, and *newValue*, run these steps:

- 1. <u>Queue a mutation record</u> of "attributes" for *element* with *attribute*'s <u>local name</u>, *attribute*'s <u>namespace</u>, *oldValue*, « », « », null, and null.
- 2. If element is <u>custom</u>, then <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with element, callback name "attributeChangedCallback", and an argument list containing attribute's <u>local name</u>, oldValue, newValue, and attribute's <u>namespace</u>.
- 3. Run the <u>attribute change steps</u> with *element*, *attribute*'s <u>local name</u>, *oldValue*, *newValue*, and *attribute*'s <u>namespace</u>.

To **change** an attribute attribute to value, run these steps:

- 1. <u>Handle attribute changes</u> for *attribute* with *attribute*'s <u>element</u>, *attribute*'s value, and *value*.
- 2. Set attribute's value to value.

To **append** an <u>attribute</u> attribute to an <u>element</u> element, run these steps:

- 1. <u>Handle attribute changes</u> for *attribute* with *element*, null, and *attribute*'s value.
- 2. Append attribute to element's attribute list.
- 3. Set *attribute*'s <u>element</u> to *element*.

To **remove** an <u>attribute</u> attribute, run these steps:

- 1. <u>Handle attribute changes</u> for *attribute* with *attribute*'s <u>element</u>, *attribute*'s <u>value</u>, and null.
- 2. Remove attribute from attribute's element's attribute list.

3. Set attribute's element to null.

To **replace** an attribute *oldAttr* with an attribute *newAttr*, run these steps:

- 1. <u>Handle attribute changes</u> for *oldAttr* with *oldAttr*'s <u>element</u>, *oldAttr*'s <u>value</u>, and *newAttr*'s <u>value</u>.
- 2. Replace oldAttr by newAttr in oldAttr's element's attribute list.
- 3. Set newAttr's element to oldAttr's element.
- 4. Set oldAttr's element to null.

To **get an attribute by name** given a *qualifiedName* and <u>element</u> *element*, run these steps:

- 1. If *element* is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *qualifiedName* to *qualifiedName* in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 2. Return the first <u>attribute</u> in <u>element's</u> <u>attribute list</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is <u>qualifiedName</u>, and null otherwise.

To **get an attribute by namespace and local name** given a *namespace*, *localName*, and **element** *element*, run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. Return the <u>attribute</u> in <u>element's attribute list</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u> and <u>local name</u> is <u>localName</u>, if any, and null otherwise.

To **get an attribute value** given an <u>element</u> *element*, *localName*, and optionally a *namespace* (null unless stated otherwise), run these steps:

- 1. Let *attr* be the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *namespace*, *localName*, and *element*.
- 2. If attr is null, then return the empty string.
- 3. Return attr's value.

To **set an attribute** given an *attr* and *element*, run these steps:

- 1. If attr's <u>element</u> is neither null nor <u>element</u>, <u>throw</u> an "<u>InUseAttributeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let *oldAttr* be the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *attr*'s <u>namespace</u>, *attr*'s <u>local name</u>, and *element*.
- 3. If *oldAttr* is *attr*, return *attr*.
- 4. If *oldAttr* is non-null, then <u>replace</u> *oldAttr* with *attr*.
- 5. Otherwise, append attr to element.
- 6. Return oldAttr.

To **set an attribute value** for an <u>element</u> *element*, using a *localName* and *value*, and an optional *prefix*, and *namespace*, run these steps:

1. If *prefix* is not given, set it to null.

- 2. If namespace is not given, set it to null.
- 3. Let attribute be the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and element.
- 4. If attribute is null, create an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> is <u>prefix</u>, <u>local name</u> is <u>localName</u>, <u>value</u> is <u>value</u>, and <u>node</u> <u>document</u> is <u>element</u>'s <u>node document</u>, then <u>append</u> this <u>attribute</u> to <u>element</u>, and then return.
- 5. Change attribute to value.

To **remove an attribute by name** given a *qualifiedName* and <u>element</u> *element*, run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given qualifiedName and element.
- 2. If attr is non-null, then <u>remove</u> attr.
- 3. Return attr.

To **remove an attribute by namespace and local name** given a *namespace*, *localName*, and <u>element</u> *element*, run these steps:

- 1. Let *attr* be the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *namespace*, *localName*, and *element*.
- 2. If attr is non-null, then remove attr.
- 3. Return attr.

An element can have an associated unique identifier (ID)

### Note

Historically <u>elements</u> could have multiple identifiers e.g., by using the HTML id <u>attribute</u> and a DTD. This specification makes <u>ID</u> a concept of the DOM and allows for only one per <u>element</u>, given by an <u>id attribute</u>.

Use these <u>attribute change steps</u> to update an <u>element</u>'s <u>ID</u>:

- 1. If *localName* is id, *namespace* is null, and *value* is null or the empty string, then unset *element*'s <u>ID</u>.
- 2. Otherwise, if *localName* is id, *namespace* is null, then set *element*'s <u>ID</u> to value.

## Note

While this specification defines requirements for class, id, and slot <u>attributes</u> on any <u>element</u>, it makes no claims as to whether using them is conforming or not.

A <u>node</u>'s <u>parent</u> of type <u>Element</u> is known as a **parent element**. If the <u>node</u> has a <u>parent</u> of a different type, its <u>parent element</u> is null.

For web developers (non-normative)

namespace = element . namespaceURI

Returns the <u>namespace</u>.

## prefix = element . prefix

Returns the namespace prefix.

### localName = element . localName

Returns the local name.

## qualifiedName = element . tagName

Returns the HTML-uppercased qualified name.

The namespaceURI attribute's getter must return this's namespace.

The prefix attribute's getter must return this's namespace prefix.

The localName attribute's getter must return this's local name.

The tagName attribute's getter must return this's HTML-uppercased qualified name.

For web developers (non-normative)

## element . id [ = value ]

Returns the value of *element's* id content attribute. Can be set to change it.

# element . className [ = value ]

Returns the value of *element's* class content attribute. Can be set to change it.

## element . classList

Allows for manipulation of *element's* class content attribute as a set of whitespace-separated tokens through a DOMTokenList object.

# element . $\underline{slot}$ [ = value ]

Returns the value of *element's* **slot** content attribute. Can be set to change it.

IDL attributes that are defined to **reflect** a content <u>attribute</u> of a given *name*, must have a getter and setter that follow these steps:

### getter

Return the result of running get an attribute value given this and name.

## setter

<u>Set an attribute value</u> for <u>this</u> using *name* and the given value.

The **id** attribute must <u>reflect</u> the "id" content attribute.

The **className** attribute must <u>reflect</u> the "class" content attribute.

The **classList** attribute's getter must return a <u>DOMTokenList</u> object whose associated <u>element</u> is <u>this</u> and whose associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u> is class. The <u>token set</u> of this particular <u>DOMTokenList</u> object are also known as the <u>element</u>'s **classes**.

The **slot** attribute must <u>reflect</u> the "slot" content attribute.

id, class, and slot are effectively superglobal attributes as they can appear on any element, regardless of that element's namespace.

# For web developers (non-normative)

# element . hasAttributes()

Returns true if *element* has attributes, and false otherwise.

# element . getAttributeNames()

Returns the <u>qualified names</u> of all *element*'s <u>attributes</u>. Can contain duplicates.

## element . getAttribute(qualifiedName)

Returns *element's* first <u>attribute</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is *qualifiedName*, and null if there is no such attribute otherwise.

# element . getAttributeNS(namespace, localName)

Returns *element's* <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u> and <u>local</u> <u>name</u> is <u>localName</u>, and null if there is no such <u>attribute</u> otherwise.

## element . setAttribute(qualifiedName, value)

Sets the <u>value</u> of <u>element's</u> first <u>attribute</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is <u>qualifiedName</u> to <u>value</u>.

## element . setAttributeNS(namespace, localName, value)

Sets the <u>value</u> of <u>element's attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u> and local name is <u>localName</u> to <u>value</u>.

# element . removeAttribute(qualifiedName)

Removes element's first attribute whose qualified name is qualifiedName.

# element . removeAttributeNS(namespace, localName)

Removes *element*'s <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is *namespace* and <u>local</u> <u>name</u> is *localName*.

## element . toggleAttribute(qualifiedName [, force])

If force is not given, "toggles" qualifiedName, removing it if it is present and adding it if it is not present. If force is true, adds qualifiedName. If force is false, removes qualifiedName.

Returns true if *qualifiedName* is now present, and false otherwise.

## element . hasAttribute(qualifiedName)

Returns true if *element* has an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is *qualifiedName*, and false otherwise.

# element . hasAttributeNS(namespace, localName)

Returns true if *element* has an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is *namespace* and <u>local name</u> is *localName*.

The **hasAttributes()** method, when invoked, must return false if <u>this</u>'s <u>attribute list</u> <u>is empty</u>, and true otherwise.

The attributes attribute's getter must return the associated NamedNodeMap.

The **getAttributeNames()** method, when invoked, must return the <u>qualified names</u> of the <u>attributes</u> in <u>this</u>'s <u>attribute list</u>, in order, and a new <u>list</u> otherwise.

These are not guaranteed to be unique.

The **getAttribute**(*gualifiedName*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given qualifiedName and this.
- 2. If attr is null, return null.
- 3. Return attr's value.

The **getAttributeNS**(*namespace*, *localName*) method, when invoked, must these steps:

- 1. Let *attr* be the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *namespace*, *localName*, and this.
- 2. If attr is null, return null.
- 3. Return attr's value.

The **setAttribute**(*qualifiedName*, *value*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *qualifiedName* does not match the <u>Name</u> production in XML, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *qualifiedName* to *qualifiedName* in ASCII lowercase.
- 3. Let *attribute* be the first <u>attribute</u> in <u>this</u>'s <u>attribute list</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is *qualifiedName*, and null otherwise.
- 4. If attribute is null, create an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>local name</u> is *qualifiedName*, <u>value</u> is <u>value</u>, and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>, then <u>append</u> this <u>attribute</u> to <u>this</u>, and then return.
- 5. Change attribute to value.

The **setAttributeNS**(*namespace*, *qualifiedName*, *value*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *namespace*, *prefix*, and *localName* be the result of passing *namespace* and *qualifiedName* to validate and extract.
- 2. <u>Set an attribute value</u> for <u>this</u> using *localName*, *value*, and also *prefix* and *namespace*.

The **removeAttribute**(**qualifiedName**) method, when invoked, must <u>remove an attribute</u> given **qualifiedName** and <u>this</u>, and then return undefined.

The removeAttributeNS(namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must remove an attribute given namespace, localName, and this, and then return undefined.

The hasAttribute(qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

1. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *qualifiedName* to *qualifiedName* in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.

2. Return true if this has an attribute whose qualified name is qualifiedName, and false otherwise.

The toggleAttribute(qualifiedName, force) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *qualifiedName* does not match the <u>Name</u> production in XML, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set *qualifiedName* to *qualifiedName* in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 3. Let *attribute* be the first <u>attribute</u> in <u>this</u>'s <u>attribute list</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is *qualifiedName*, and null otherwise.
- 4. If attribute is null, then:
  - 1. If force is not given or is true, create an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>local name</u> is qualifiedName, <u>value</u> is the empty string, and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>, then <u>append</u> this <u>attribute</u> to <u>this</u>, and then return true.
  - 2. Return false.
- 5. Otherwise, if *force* is not given or is false, <u>remove an attribute</u> given *qualifiedName* and <u>this</u>, and then return false.
- 6. Return true.

The hasAttributeNS(namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. Return true if <u>this has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is <u>namespace</u> and <u>local</u> name is <u>localName</u>, and false otherwise.

The **getAttributeNode**(*qualifiedName*) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *qualifiedName* and <u>this</u>.

The **getAttributeNodeNS**(*namespace*, *localName*) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *namespace*, *localName*, and <u>this</u>.

The **setAttributeNode**(attr) and **setAttributeNodeNS**(attr) methods, when invoked, must return the result of <u>setting an attribute</u> given attr and <u>this</u>.

The removeAttributeNode(attr) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If <u>this</u>'s <u>attribute list</u> does not <u>contain</u> <u>attr</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotFoundError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Remove attr.
- 3. Return attr.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
var shadow = element . attachShadow(init)
```

Creates a shadow root for element and returns it.

## var shadow = element . shadowRoot

Returns *element*'s <u>shadow root</u>, if any, and if <u>shadow root</u>'s <u>mode</u> is "open", and null otherwise.

The attachShadow(init) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If <u>this</u>'s <u>namespace</u> is not the <u>HTML namespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 2. If this's local name is not one of the following:
  - a valid custom element name
     "article", "aside", "blockquote", "body", "div", "footer", "h1", "h2", "h3", "h4", "h5", "h6", "header", "main", "nav", "p", "section", or

then <a href="mailto:throw">throw</a> a "NotSupportedError" <a href="DOMException">DOMException</a>.

- 3. If <u>this</u>'s <u>local name</u> is a <u>valid custom element name</u>, or <u>this</u>'s <u>is value</u> is not null. then:
  - 1. Let *definition* be the result of <u>looking up a custom element definition</u> given <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>, its <u>namespace</u>, its <u>local name</u>, and its <u>is</u> value.
  - 2. If *definition* is not null and *definition*'s <u>disable shadow</u> is true, then <u>throw</u> a "NotSupportedError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If this is a shadow host, then throw an "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 5. Let *shadow* be a new <u>shadow root</u> whose <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>'s <u>node</u> <u>document</u>, <u>host</u> is <u>this</u>, and <u>mode</u> is *init*'s <u>mode</u>.
- 6. Set shadow's <u>delegates focus</u> to init's <u>delegatesFocus</u>.
- 7. If <u>this</u>'s <u>custom element state</u> is "precustomized" or "custom", then set <u>shadow</u>'s <u>available to element internals</u> to true.
- 8. Set this's shadow root to shadow.
- 9. Return shadow.

The **shadowRoot** attribute's getter must run these steps:

- 1. Let shadow be this's shadow root.
- 2. If shadow is null or its mode is "closed", then return null.
- 3. Return shadow.

For web developers (non-normative)

## element . closest(selectors)

Returns the first (starting at *element*) <u>inclusive ancestor</u> that matches *selectors*, and null otherwise.

### element . matches(selectors)

Returns true if matching *selectors* against *element*'s <u>root</u> yields *element*, and false otherwise.

The closest(selectors) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let s be the result of parse a selector from selectors. [SELECTORS4]
- 2. If s is failure, throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 3. Let *elements* be <u>this</u>'s <u>inclusive ancestors</u> that are <u>elements</u>, in reverse <u>tree</u> order.
- 4. For each element in elements, if <u>match a selector against an element</u>, using s, element, and <u>:scope element this</u>, returns success, return element.

  [SELECTORS4]
- 5. Return null.

The matches(selectors) and webkitMatchesSelector(selectors) method steps are:

- 1. Let s be the result of parse a selector from selectors. [SELECTORS4]
- 2. If s is failure, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 3. If the result of <u>match a selector against an element</u>, using *s*, <u>this</u>, and <u>:scope element this</u>, returns success, then return true; otherwise, return false. [SELECTORS4]

The **getElementsByTagName**(**qualifiedName**) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName</u> for <u>this</u>.

The **getElementsByTagNameNS**(*namespace*, *localName*) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with namespace namespace</u> and <u>local name localName</u> for this.

The **getElementsByClassName**(*classNames*) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with class names *classNames*</u> for <u>this</u>.

To **insert adjacent**, given an <u>element</u> element, string where, and a <u>node</u> node, run the steps associated with the first ASCII case-insensitive match for where:

## → "beforebegin"

If element's parent is null, return null.

Return the result of <u>pre-inserting</u> *node* into *element's* <u>parent</u> before *element*.

# 

Return the result of <u>pre-inserting</u> *node* into *element* before *element*'s <u>first</u> <u>child</u>.

### → "beforeend"

Return the result of pre-inserting node into element before null.

## "afterend"

If element's parent is null, return null.

Return the result of pre-inserting node into element's parent before

element's next sibling.

### → Otherwise

```
Throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
```

The **insertAdjacentElement**(*where*, *element*) method, when invoked, must return the result of running insert adjacent, give this, *where*, and *element*.

The insertAdjacentText(where, data) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *text* be a new <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>data</u> is *data* and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. Run insert adjacent, given this, where, and text.

### Note

This method returns nothing because it existed before we had a chance to design it.

# § 4.9.1. Interface NamedNodeMap

```
[Exposed=Window,
   LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties]
interface NamedNodeMap {
   readonly attribute unsigned long length;
   getter Attr? item(unsigned long index);
   getter Attr? getNamedItem(DOMString qualifiedName);
   Attr? getNamedItemNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString)
localName);
   [CEReactions] Attr? setNamedItem(Attr attr);
   [CEReactions] Attr? setNamedItem(S(Attr attr);
   [CEReactions] Attr removeNamedItem(DOMString qualifiedName);
   [CEReactions] Attr removeNamedItem(DOMString? namespace,
   DOMString localName);
};
```

A NamedNodeMap has an associated element (an element).

A NamedNodeMap object's attribute list is its element's attribute list.

A <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object's <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to its <u>attribute list</u>'s <u>size</u> minus one, unless the <u>attribute list</u> is <u>empty</u>, in which case there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The **length** attribute's getter must return the <u>attribute list</u>'s <u>size</u>.

The **item(index)** method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If index is equal to or greater than this's attribute list's size, then return null.
- 2. Otherwise, return this's attribute list[index].

A <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object's <u>supported property names</u> are the return value of running these steps:

- 1. Let *names* be the <u>qualified names</u> of the <u>attributes</u> in this <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object's <u>attribute list</u>, with duplicates omitted, in order.
- 2. If this <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object's <u>element</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node</u> <u>document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then <u>for each</u> <u>name</u> in <u>names</u>:
  - 1. Let lowercaseName be name, in ASCII lowercase.
  - 2. If lowercaseName is not equal to name, remove name from names.
- 3. Return names.

The **getNamedItem**(**qualifiedName**) method, when invoked, must return the result of **getting** an attribute given **qualifiedName** and **element**.

The **getNamedItemNS**(*namespace*, *localName*) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>getting an attribute</u> given *namespace*, *localName*, and <u>element</u>.

The setNamedItem(attr) and setNamedItemNS(attr) methods, when invoked, must return the result of setting an attribute given attr and element.

The removeNamedItem(qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *attr* be the result of <u>removing an attribute</u> given *qualifiedName* and <u>element</u>.
- 2. If attr is null, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 3. Return attr.

The **removeNamedItemNS**(*namespace*, *localName*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *attr* be the result of <u>removing an attribute</u> given *namespace*, *localName*, and <u>element</u>.
- 2. If attr is null, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 3. Return attr.

## § 4.9.2. Interface Attr

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Attr : Node {
  readonly attribute DOMString? namespaceURI;
  readonly attribute DOMString? prefix;
  readonly attribute DOMString localName;
  readonly attribute DOMString name;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString value;

readonly attribute Element? ownerElement;

readonly attribute boolean specified; // useless; always
```

```
returns true
};
```

Attr <u>nodes</u> are simply known as **attributes**. They are sometimes referred to as content attributes to avoid confusion with IDL attributes.

<u>Attributes</u> have a **namespace** (null or a non-empty string), **namespace prefix** (null or a non-empty string), **local name** (a non-empty string), **value** (a string), and **element** (null or an element).

### Note

An <u>attribute</u>'s **qualified name** is its <u>local name</u> if its <u>namespace prefix</u> is null, and its <u>namespace prefix</u>, followed by ":", followed by its <u>local name</u>, otherwise.

### Note

User agents could have this as an internal slot as an optimization.

When an <u>attribute</u> is created, its <u>local name</u> is given. Unless explicitly given when an <u>attribute</u> is created, its <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u>, and <u>element</u> are set to null, and its <u>value</u> is set to the empty string.

An **A attribute** is an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>local name</u> is **A** and whose <u>namespace</u> and namespace prefix are null.

The namespaceURI attribute's getter must return the namespace.

The **prefix** attribute's getter must return the <u>namespace prefix</u>.

The **localName** attribute's getter must return the <u>local name</u>.

The name attribute's getter must return the qualified name.

The value attribute's getter must return the value.

To **set an existing attribute value**, given an <u>attribute</u> attribute and string value, run these steps:

- 1. If attribute's <u>element</u> is null, then set attribute's <u>value</u> to value.
- 2. Otherwise, change attribute to value.

The <u>value</u> attribute's setter must <u>set an existing attribute value</u> with <u>this</u> and the given value.

The ownerElement attribute's getter must return this's element.

The **specified** attribute's getter must return true.

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface CharacterData : Node {
   attribute [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString data;
   readonly attribute unsigned long length;
   DOMString substringData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count);
   undefined appendData(DOMString data);
   undefined insertData(unsigned long offset, DOMString data);
   undefined deleteData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count);
   undefined replaceData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count, DOMString data);
};
```

### Note

<u>CharacterData</u> is an abstract interface and does not exist as <u>node</u>. It is used by <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment</u> <u>nodes</u>.

Each <u>node</u> inheriting from the <u>CharacterData</u> interface has an associated mutable string called **data**.

To **replace data** of node *node* with offset *offset*, count *count*, and data *data*, run these steps:

- 1. Let *length* be *node*'s <u>length</u>.
- If offset is greater than length, then throw an "IndexSizeError"
   DOMException.
- 3. If offset plus count is greater than length, then set count to length minus offset.
- 4. Queue a mutation record of "characterData" for node with null, null, node's data, « », « », null, and null.
- 5. Insert data into node's data after offset code units.
- 6. Let delete offset be offset + data's length.
- 7. Starting from *delete offset* <u>code units</u>, remove <u>count</u> <u>code units</u> from <u>node</u>'s <u>data</u>.
- 8. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>node</u> and <u>start offset</u> is greater than <u>offset</u> but less than or equal to <u>offset</u> plus <u>count</u>, set its <u>start offset</u> to <u>offset</u>.
- 9. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>node</u> and <u>end offset</u> is greater than <u>offset</u> but less than or equal to <u>offset</u> plus <u>count</u>, set its <u>end offset</u> to <u>offset</u>.
- 10. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>node</u> and <u>start offset</u> is greater than <u>offset</u> plus <u>count</u>, increase its <u>start offset</u> by <u>data</u>'s <u>length</u> and decrease it by <u>count</u>.
- 11. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>node</u> and <u>end offset</u> is greater than <u>offset</u> plus <u>count</u>, increase its <u>end offset</u> by <u>data</u>'s <u>length</u> and decrease it by <u>count</u>.

12. If *node*'s <u>parent</u> is non-null, then run the <u>children changed steps</u> for *node*'s parent.

To **substring data** with node *node*, offset *offset*, and count *count*, run these steps:

- 1. Let length be node's length.
- 2. If offset is greater than length, then throw an "IndexSizeError" DOMException.
- 3. If *offset* plus *count* is greater than *length*, return a string whose value is the <a href="code units">code units</a> from the *offset*<sup>th</sup> <a href="code unit">code unit</a> to the end of *node*'s <a href="data">data</a>, and then return.
- 4. Return a string whose value is the <u>code units</u> from the *offset*<sup>th</sup> <u>code unit</u> to the *offset*+*count*<sup>th</sup> <u>code unit</u> in *node*'s data.

The data attribute's getter must return this's data. Its setter must replace data with node this, offset 0, count this's length, and data new value.

The length attribute's getter must return this's length.

The **substringData(offset, count)** method, when invoked, must return the result of running substring data with node this, offset *offset*, and count *count*.

The appendData(data) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset <u>this</u>'s <u>length</u>, count 0, and data data.

The **insertData**(*offset*, *data*) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node this, offset *offset*, count 0, and data *data*.

The **deleteData**(*offset*, *count*) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset *offset*, count *count*, and data the empty string.

The **replaceData**(**offset**, **count**, **data**) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset **offset**, count **count**, and data **data**.

# 4.11. Interface Text

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Text : CharacterData {
   constructor(optional DOMString data = "");

[NewObject] Text splitText(unsigned long offset);
   readonly attribute DOMString wholeText;
};
```

```
For web developers (non-normative)
```

```
text = new Text([data = ""])
Returns a new Text node whose data is data.
```

text . splitText(offset)

Splits <u>data</u> at the given *offset* and returns the remainder as <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>.

text . wholeText

An **exclusive** Text **node** is a Text <u>node</u> that is not a <u>CDATASection</u> <u>node</u>.

The **contiguous** <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u> of a <u>node</u> <u>node</u> are <u>node</u>, <u>node</u>'s <u>previous sibling</u> <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous</u> <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, and <u>node</u>'s <u>next sibling</u> <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous</u> <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, avoiding any duplicates.

The **contiguous exclusive** <u>Text</u> **nodes** of a <u>node</u> *node* are *node*, *node*'s <u>previous</u> <u>sibling</u> <u>exclusive</u> <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous</u> <u>exclusive</u> <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, and <u>node</u>'s <u>next</u> <u>sibling</u> <u>exclusive</u> <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous</u> <u>exclusive</u> <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, avoiding any duplicates.

The **child text content** of a <u>node</u> node is the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of all the <u>Text</u> node children of *node*, in tree order.

The **descendant text content** of a <u>node</u> <u>node</u> is the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of all the <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> <u>descendants</u> of <u>node</u>, in <u>tree order</u>.

The **Text**(*data*) constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>data</u> is *data* and node document is current global object's associated <u>Document</u>.

To **split** a <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> <u>node</u> with offset <u>offset</u>, run these steps:

- 1. Let length be node's length.
- 2. If *offset* is greater than *length*, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. Let count be length minus offset.
- 4. Let *new data* be the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node *node*, offset *offset*, and count *count*.
- 5. Let *new node* be a new <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, with the same <u>node document</u> as *node*. Set new node's <u>data</u> to new data.
- 6. Let parent be node's parent.
- 7. If parent is not null, then:
  - 1. <u>Insert</u> new node into parent before node's <u>next sibling</u>.
  - For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>node</u> and <u>start offset</u> is greater than <u>offset</u>, set its <u>start node</u> to <u>new node</u> and decrease its <u>start offset</u> by <u>offset</u>.
  - 3. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>node</u> and <u>end offset</u> is greater than <u>offset</u>, set its <u>end node</u> to <u>new node</u> and decrease its <u>end offset</u> by <u>offset</u>.
  - 4. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is <u>parent</u> and <u>start offset</u> is equal to the index of <u>node</u> plus 1, increase its start offset by 1.
  - 5. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is <u>parent</u> and <u>end offset</u> is equal to the index of <u>node</u> plus 1, increase its end offset by 1.
- 8. Replace data with node node, offset offset, count count, and data the empty

string.

9. Return new node.

The **splitText**(**offset**) method, when invoked, must <u>split this</u> with offset **offset**.

The wholeText attribute's getter must return the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of the <u>contiguous Text nodes</u> of <u>this</u>, in <u>tree order</u>.

# § 4.12. Interface CDATASection

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface CDATASection : Text {
};
```

# § 4.13. Interface <a href="ProcessingInstruction">ProcessingInstruction</a>

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface ProcessingInstruction : CharacterData {
  readonly attribute DOMString target;
};
```

<u>ProcessingInstruction</u> <u>nodes</u> have an associated **target**.

The target attribute must return the target.

# 4.14. Interface Comment

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Comment : CharacterData {
  constructor(optional DOMString data = "");
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
comment = new Comment([data = ""])
```

Returns a new  $\underline{\text{Comment}}$   $\underline{\text{node}}$  whose  $\underline{\text{data}}$  is data.

The Comment (data) constructor, when invoked, must return a new Comment node whose data is data and node document is current global object's associated Document.

# 5.1. Introduction to "DOM Ranges"

<u>StaticRange</u> and <u>Range</u> objects (<u>ranges</u>) represent a sequence of content within a <u>node tree</u>. Each <u>range</u> has a <u>start</u> and an <u>end</u> which are <u>boundary points</u>. A <u>boundary point</u> is a <u>tuple</u> consisting of a <u>node</u> and an <u>offset</u>. So in other words, a <u>range</u> represents a piece of content within a <u>node tree</u> between two <u>boundary points</u>.

Ranges are frequently used in editing for selecting and copying content.

```
Element: p

Element: <img src="insanity-wolf" alt="Little-endian BOM; decode as big-endian!">

Text: CSS 2.1 syndata is

Element: <em>
Lement: awesome
Text: !
```

In the <u>node tree</u> above, a <u>range</u> can be used to represent the sequence "syndata is awes". Assuming p is assigned to the p <u>element</u>, and em to the em <u>element</u>, this would be done as follows:

```
var range = new Range(),
    firstText = p.childNodes[1],
    secondText = em.firstChild
range.setStart(firstText, 9) // do not forget the leading
space
range.setEnd(secondText, 4)
// range now stringifies to the aforementioned quote
```

## Note

<u>Attributes</u> such as src and alt in the <u>node tree</u> above cannot be represented by a <u>range</u>. <u>Ranges</u> are only useful for <u>nodes</u>.

Range objects, unlike <u>StaticRange</u> objects, are affected by mutations to the <u>node</u> <u>tree</u>. Therefore they are also known as <u>live ranges</u>. Such mutations will not invalidate them and will try to ensure that it still represents the same piece of content.

Necessarily, a <u>live range</u> might itself be modified as part of the mutation to the <u>node</u> <u>tree</u> when, e.g., part of the content it represents is mutated.

# Note

See the <u>insert</u> and <u>remove</u> algorithms, the <u>normalize()</u> method, and the <u>replace</u> <u>data</u> and <u>split</u> algorithms for details.

Updating <u>live ranges</u> in response to <u>node tree</u> mutations can be expensive. For every <u>node tree</u> change, all affected <u>Range</u> objects need to be updated. Even if the application is uninterested in some <u>live ranges</u>, it still has to pay the cost of keeping them up-to-date when a mutation occurs.

A <u>StaticRange</u> object is a lightweight <u>range</u> that does not update when the <u>node tree</u> mutates. It is therefore not subject to the same maintenance cost as <u>live ranges</u>.

# 5.2. Boundary points

A **boundary point** is a <u>tuple</u> consisting of a **node** (a <u>node</u>) and an **offset** (a non-negative integer).

Note

A correct <u>boundary point</u>'s <u>offset</u> will be between 0 and the <u>boundary point</u>'s <u>node</u>'s <u>length</u>, inclusive.

The **position** of a <u>boundary point</u> (*nodeA*, *offsetA*) relative to a <u>boundary point</u> (*nodeB*, *offsetB*) is **before**, **equal**, or **after**, as returned by these steps:

- 1. Assert: nodeA and nodeB have the same root.
- 2. If nodeA is nodeB, then return <u>equal</u> if offsetA is offsetB, <u>before</u> if offsetA is less than offsetB, and after if offsetA is greater than offsetB.
- 3. If nodeA is <u>following</u> nodeB, then if the <u>position</u> of (nodeB, offsetB) relative to (nodeA, offsetA) is <u>before</u>, return <u>after</u>, and if it is <u>after</u>, return <u>before</u>.
- 4. If nodeA is an ancestor of nodeB:
  - 1. Let child be nodeB.
  - 2. While child is not a child of nodeA, set child to its parent.
  - 3. If *child*'s <u>index</u> is less than *offsetA*, then return <u>after</u>.
- 5. Return before.

# 5.3. Interface AbstractRange

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface AbstractRange {
  readonly attribute Node startContainer;
  readonly attribute unsigned long startOffset;
  readonly attribute Node endContainer;
  readonly attribute unsigned long endOffset;
  readonly attribute boolean collapsed;
};
```

Objects implementing the AbstractRange interface are known as ranges.

A <u>range</u> has two associated <u>boundary points</u> — a **start** and **end**.

For convenience, a <u>range</u>'s **start node** is its <u>start</u>'s <u>node</u>, its **start offset** is its <u>start</u>'s <u>offset</u>, its **end node** is its <u>end</u>'s <u>node</u>, and its **end offset** is its <u>end</u>'s <u>offset</u>.

A <u>range</u> is **collapsed** if its <u>start node</u> is its <u>end node</u> and its <u>start offset</u> is its <u>end offset</u>.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node = range . startContainer
Returns range's start node.
```

```
offset = range . startOffset
    Returns range's start offset.

node = range . endContainer
    Returns range's end node.

offset = range . endOffset
    Returns range's end offset.

collapsed = range . collapsed
    Returns true if range is collapsed, and false otherwise.
```

The **startContainer** attribute's getter must return this's start node.

The **startOffset** attribute's getter must return this's start offset.

The endContainer attribute's getter must return this's end node.

The endOffset attribute's getter must return this's end offset.

The **collapsed** attribute's getter must return true if <u>this</u> is <u>collapsed</u>, and false otherwise.

# § 5.4. Interface StaticRange

```
dictionary StaticRangeInit {
    required Node startContainer;
    required unsigned long startOffset;
    required Node endContainer;
    required unsigned long endOffset;
};

[Exposed=Window]
interface StaticRange : AbstractRange {
    constructor(StaticRangeInit init);
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
staticRange = new StaticRange(init)
```

Returns a new <u>range</u> object that does not update when the <u>node tree</u> mutates.

The **StaticRange**(*init*) constructor, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *init*'s <u>startContainer</u> or <u>endContainer</u> is a <u>DocumentType</u> or <u>Attr node</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let staticRange be a new <a href="StaticRange">StaticRange</a> object.
- 3. Set *staticRange*'s <u>start</u> to (*init*'s <u>startContainer</u>, *init*'s <u>startOffset</u>) and <u>end</u> to (*init*'s <u>endContainer</u>, *init*'s <u>endOffset</u>).
- 4. Return staticRange.

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Range : AbstractRange {
  constructor();
  readonly attribute Node commonAncestorContainer;
  undefined setStart(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  undefined setEnd(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  undefined setStartBefore(Node node);
  undefined setStartAfter(Node node);
  undefined setEndBefore(Node node);
  undefined setEndAfter(Node node);
  undefined collapse(optional boolean toStart = false);
  undefined selectNode(Node node);
  undefined selectNodeContents(Node node);
  const unsigned short START_TO_START = 0;
  const unsigned short START_TO_END = 1;
  const unsigned short END TO END = 2;
  const unsigned short END_TO_START = 3;
  short compareBoundaryPoints(unsigned short how, Range
sourceRange);
  [CEReactions] undefined deleteContents();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment extractContents();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment cloneContents();
  [CEReactions] undefined insertNode(Node node);
  [CEReactions] undefined surroundContents(Node newParent);
  [NewObject] Range cloneRange();
  undefined detach();
  boolean isPointInRange(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  short comparePoint(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  boolean intersectsNode(Node node);
  stringifier;
};
```

Objects implementing the Range interface are known as **live ranges**.

### Note

Algorithms that modify a tree (in particular the insert, remove, replace data, and split algorithms) modify live ranges associated with that tree.

The **root** of a <u>live range</u> is the <u>root</u> of its <u>start node</u>.

A node node is **contained** in a live range range if node's root is range's root, and (node, 0) is after range's start, and (node, node's length) is before range's end.

A <u>node</u> is **partially contained** in a <u>live range</u> if it's an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of the <u>live</u> range's start node but not its end node, or vice versa.

Some facts to better understand these definitions:

- The content that one would think of as being within the <u>live range</u> consists of all <u>contained nodes</u>, plus possibly some of the contents of the <u>start node</u> and <u>end node</u> if those are <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment nodes</u>.
- The <u>nodes</u> that are contained in a <u>live range</u> will generally not be contiguous, because the <u>parent</u> of a <u>contained</u> <u>node</u> will not always be <u>contained</u>.
- However, the <u>descendants</u> of a <u>contained</u> <u>node</u> are <u>contained</u>, and if two <u>siblings</u> are <u>contained</u>, so are any <u>siblings</u> that lie between them.
- The <u>start node</u> and <u>end node</u> of a <u>live range</u> are never <u>contained</u> within it.
- The first <u>contained node</u> (if there are any) will always be after the <u>start node</u>, and the last <u>contained node</u> will always be equal to or before the <u>end node</u>'s last <u>descendant</u>.
- There exists a <u>partially contained</u> <u>node</u> if and only if the <u>start node</u> and <u>end node</u> are different.
- The <a href="commonAncestorContainer">commonAncestorContainer</a> attribute value is neither <a href="contained">contained</a> nor <a href="partially contained">partially contained</a>.
- If the <u>start node</u> is an <u>ancestor</u> of the <u>end node</u>, the common <u>inclusive</u> <u>ancestor</u> will be the <u>start node</u>. Exactly one of its <u>children</u> will be <u>partially</u> <u>contained</u>, and a <u>child</u> will be <u>contained</u> if and only if it <u>precedes</u> the <u>partially contained child</u>. If the <u>end node</u> is an <u>ancestor</u> of the <u>start node</u>, the opposite holds.
- If the <u>start node</u> is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of the <u>end node</u>, nor vice versa, the common <u>inclusive ancestor</u> will be distinct from both of them. Exactly two of its <u>children</u> will be <u>partially contained</u>, and a <u>child</u> will be contained if and only if it lies between those two.

For web developers (non-normative)

range = new Range()

Returns a new <u>live range</u>.

The Range() constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>live range</u> with (<u>current global object's associated Document</u>, 0) as its start and end.

For web developers (non-normative)

## container = range . commonAncestorContainer

Returns the <u>node</u>, furthest away from the <u>document</u>, that is an <u>ancestor</u> of both *range*'s start node and end node.

The commonAncestorContainer attribute's getter must run these steps:

- 1. Let container be start node.
- 2. While container is not an inclusive ancestor of end node, let container be

container's parent.

3. Return container.

To **set the start or end** of a *range* to a <u>boundary point</u> (*node*, *offset*), run these steps:

- 1. If node is a doctype, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 2. If offset is greater than node's <u>length</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. Let bp be the boundary point (node, offset).
- 4. → If these steps were invoked as "set the start"
  - 1. If range's <u>root</u> is not equal to <u>node</u>'s <u>root</u>, or if <u>bp</u> is <u>after</u> the <u>range</u>'s <u>end</u>, set <u>range</u>'s <u>end</u> to <u>bp</u>.
  - 2. Set range's start to bp.
  - → If these steps were invoked as "set the end"
    - 1. If range's <u>root</u> is not equal to node's <u>root</u>, or if bp is <u>before</u> the range's <u>start</u>, set range's <u>start</u> to bp.
    - 2. Set range's end to bp.

The **setStart**(*node*, *offset*) method, when invoked, must <u>set the start</u> of <u>this</u> to <u>boundary point</u> (*node*, *offset*).

The **setEnd**(*node*, *offset*) method, when invoked, must <u>set the end</u> of <u>this</u> to boundary point (*node*, *offset*).

The **setStartBefore**(**node**) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be node's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. Set the start of this to boundary point (parent, node's index).

The **setStartAfter**(*node*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be node's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. <u>Set the start</u> of <u>this</u> to <u>boundary point</u> (*parent*, *node*'s <u>index</u> plus 1).

The **setEndBefore**(*node*), when invoked, method must run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be node's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. <u>Set the end</u> of this to boundary point (parent, node's index).

The **setEndAfter**(*node*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

1. Let parent be node's parent.

- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. Set the end of this to boundary point (parent, node's index plus 1).

The **collapse**(**toStart**) method, when invoked, must if **toStart** is true, set <u>end</u> to <u>start</u>, and set <u>start</u> to <u>end</u> otherwise.

To **select** a node node within a range range, run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be node's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. Let *index* be *node*'s <u>index</u>.
- 4. Set range's start to boundary point (parent, index).
- 5. Set range's end to boundary point (parent, index plus 1).

The **selectNode**(*node*) method, when invoked, must <u>select</u> *node* within <u>this</u>.

The selectNodeContents (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If node is a doctype, throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 2. Let *length* be the *length* of *node*.
- 3. Set start to the boundary point (node, 0).
- 4. Set end to the boundary point (node, length).

The **compareBoundaryPoints**(*how*, *sourceRange*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If how is not one of
  - START TO START,
  - START TO END,
  - END TO END, and
  - END\_TO\_START,

then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.

- 2. If <u>this</u>'s <u>root</u> is not the same as <u>sourceRange</u>'s <u>root</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>WrongDocumentError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If how is:
  - → START TO START:

Let this point be this's start. Let other point be sourceRange's start.

→ START TO END:

Let this point be this's end. Let other point be sourceRange's start.

Let this point be this's end. Let other point be sourceRange's end.

Let this point be this's start. Let other point be sourceRange's end.

4. If the position of this point relative to other point is

**→** before

Return -1.

→ equal

Return 0.

→ after

Return 1.

The **deleteContents()** method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this is collapsed, then return.
- 2. Let *original start node*, *original start offset*, *original end node*, and *original end offset* be this's start node, start offset, end node, and end offset, respectively.
- 3. If original start node and original end node are the same, and they are a <a href="Text">Text</a>, <a href="ProcessingInstruction">ProcessingInstruction</a>, or <a href="Comment node">Comment node</a>, <a href="replace data">replace data</a> with node original start node, offset original start offset, count original end offset minus original start offset, and data the empty string, and then return.
- 4. Let *nodes to remove* be a list of all the <u>nodes</u> that are <u>contained</u> in <u>this</u>, in <u>tree</u> <u>order</u>, omitting any <u>node</u> whose <u>parent</u> is also <u>contained</u> in <u>this</u>.
- 5. If original start node is an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set new node to original start node and new offset to original start offset.
- 6. Otherwise:
  - 1. Let reference node equal original start node.
  - 2. While reference node's <u>parent</u> is not null and is not an <u>inclusive</u> <u>ancestor</u> of *original end node*, set reference node to its <u>parent</u>.
  - 3. Set *new node* to the <u>parent</u> of *reference node*, and *new offset* to one plus the <u>index</u> of *reference node*.

#### Note

If reference node's <u>parent</u> were null, it would be the <u>root</u> of <u>this</u>, so would be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, and we could not reach this point.

- 7. If original start node is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, <u>replace data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, count original start node's length minus original start offset, data the empty string.
- 8. For each *node* in *nodes to remove*, in <u>tree order</u>, <u>remove</u> *node*.
- 9. If original end node is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, <u>replace data</u> with node original end node, offset 0, count original end offset and data the empty string.
- 10. Set start and end to (new node, new offset).

To **extract** a <u>live range</u> range, run these steps:

- 1. Let *fragment* be a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>node document</u> is <u>range</u>'s <u>start node</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. If range is <u>collapsed</u>, then return fragment.
- 3. Let *original start node*, *original start offset*, *original end node*, and *original end offset* be *range's* <u>start node</u>, <u>start offset</u>, <u>end node</u>, and <u>end offset</u>,

respectively.

- 4. If original start node is original end node, and they are a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:
  - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original start node.
  - Set the <u>data</u> of *clone* to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original end offset minus original start offset.
  - 3. Append clone to fragment.
  - 4. <u>Replace data</u> with node *original start node*, offset *original start offset*, count *original end offset* minus *original start offset*, and data the empty string.
  - 5. Return fragment.
- 5. Let common ancestor be original start node.
- 6. While *common ancestor* is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of *original end node*, set *common ancestor* to its own <u>parent</u>.
- 7. Let first partially contained child be null.
- 8. If original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set first partially contained child to the first <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially contained</u> in range.
- 9. Let last partially contained child be null.
- 10. If original end node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original start node, set last partially contained child to the last <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially contained</u> in range.

#### Note

These variable assignments do actually always make sense. For instance, if original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, original start node is itself <u>partially contained</u> in range, and so are all its <u>ancestors</u> up until a <u>child</u> of common ancestor. common ancestor cannot be original start node, because it has to be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node. The other case is similar. Also, notice that the two <u>children</u> will never be equal if both are defined.

- 11. Let *contained children* be a list of all <u>children</u> of *common ancestor* that are <u>contained</u> in *range*, in <u>tree order</u>.
- 12. If any member of *contained children* is a <u>doctype</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

### Note

We do not have to worry about the first or last partially contained node, because a <u>doctype</u> can never be partially contained. It cannot be a boundary point of a range, and it cannot be the ancestor of anything.

- 13. If original start node is an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set new node to original start node and new offset to original start offset.
- 14. Otherwise:
  - 1. Let reference node equal original start node.
  - 2. While reference node's <u>parent</u> is not null and is not an <u>inclusive</u> <u>ancestor</u> of *original end node*, set reference node to its <u>parent</u>.

3. Set *new node* to the <u>parent</u> of *reference node*, and *new offset* to one plus *reference node*'s index.

#### Note

If reference node's <u>parent</u> is null, it would be the <u>root</u> of range, so would be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, and we could not reach this point.

15. If first partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:

#### Note

In this case, first partially contained child is original start node.

- 1. Let clone be a clone of original start node.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of *clone* to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original start node's <u>length</u> minus original start offset.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 4. <u>Replace data</u> with node *original start node*, offset *original start offset*, count *original start node*'s <u>length</u> minus *original start offset*, and data the empty string.
- 16. Otherwise, if first partially contained child is not null:
  - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of first partially contained child.
  - 2. Append clone to fragment.
  - 3. Let *subrange* be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (*original start node*, *original start offset*) and whose <u>end</u> is (*first partially contained child*, *first partially contained child*'s <u>length</u>).
  - 4. Let *subfragment* be the result of <u>extracting</u> *subrange*.
  - 5. <u>Append</u> subfragment to clone.
- 17. For each contained child in contained children, <u>append</u> contained child to fragment.
- 18. If last partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u> node:

#### Note

In this case, last partially contained child is original end node.

- 1. Let *clone* be a <u>clone</u> of *original end node*.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of *clone* to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node *original end node*, offset 0, and count *original end offset*.
- 3. <u>Append</u> clone to fragment.
- 4. Replace data with node *original end node*, offset 0, count *original end offset*, and data the empty string.
- 19. Otherwise, if last partially contained child is not null:
  - 1. Let clone be a clone of last partially contained child.
  - 2. Append clone to fragment.

- 3. Let *subrange* be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (*last partially contained child*, 0) and whose <u>end</u> is (*original end node, original end offset*).
- 4. Let *subfragment* be the result of <u>extracting</u> *subrange*.
- 5. Append subfragment to clone.
- 20. Set range's start and end to (new node, new offset).
- 21. Return fragment.

The **extractContents()** method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>extracting</u> this.

To **clone the contents** of a <u>live range</u> range, run these steps:

- 1. Let *fragment* be a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>node document</u> is <u>range</u>'s <u>start node</u>'s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. If range is collapsed, then return fragment.
- 3. Let *original start node*, *original start offset*, *original end node*, and *original end offset* be *range*'s <u>start node</u>, <u>start offset</u>, <u>end node</u>, and <u>end offset</u>, respectively.
- 4. If original start node is original end node, and they are a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:
  - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original start node.
  - 2. Set the <u>data</u> of *clone* to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original end offset minus original start offset.
  - 3. Append clone to fragment.
  - 4. Return fragment.
- 5. Let common ancestor be original start node.
- 6. While *common ancestor* is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of *original end node*, set *common ancestor* to its own parent.
- 7. Let first partially contained child be null.
- 8. If original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set first partially contained child to the first <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially</u> contained in range.
- 9. Let last partially contained child be null.
- 10. If original end node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original start node, set last partially contained child to the last <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially</u> contained in range.

#### Note

These variable assignments do actually always make sense. For instance, if original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, original start node is itself <u>partially contained</u> in range, and so are all its <u>ancestors</u> up until a <u>child</u> of common ancestor. common ancestor cannot be original start node, because it has to be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node. The other case is similar. Also, notice that the two <u>children</u> will never be equal if both are defined.

- 11. Let *contained children* be a list of all <u>children</u> of *common ancestor* that are <u>contained</u> in *range*, in <u>tree order</u>.
- 12. If any member of *contained children* is a <u>doctype</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

#### Note

We do not have to worry about the first or last partially contained node, because a <u>doctype</u> can never be partially contained. It cannot be a boundary point of a range, and it cannot be the ancestor of anything.

13. If first partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:

#### Note

In this case, first partially contained child is original start node.

- 1. Let *clone* be a <u>clone</u> of *original start node*.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of *clone* to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original start node's length minus original start offset.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 14. Otherwise, if first partially contained child is not null:
  - 1. Let clone be a clone of first partially contained child.
  - 2. <u>Append</u> clone to fragment.
  - 3. Let *subrange* be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (*original start node*, *original start offset*) and whose <u>end</u> is (*first partially contained child*, *first partially contained child*'s <u>length</u>).
  - 4. Let *subfragment* be the result of cloning the contents of *subrange*.
  - 5. Append subfragment to clone.
- 15. For each contained child in contained children:
  - 1. Let clone be a clone of contained child with the clone children flag set.
  - 2. Append clone to fragment.
- 16. If *last partially contained child* is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:

#### Note

In this case, last partially contained child is original end node.

- 1. Let *clone* be a <u>clone</u> of *original end node*.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of *clone* to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node *original end node*, offset 0, and count *original end offset*.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 17. Otherwise, if *last partially contained child* is not null:
  - 1. Let clone be a clone of last partially contained child.
  - 2. Append clone to fragment.
  - 3. Let *subrange* be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (*last partially contained child*, 0) and whose <u>end</u> is (*original end node*, *original end offset*).

- 4. Let *subfragment* be the result of <u>cloning the contents</u> of *subrange*.
- 5. Append subfragment to clone.
- 18. Return fragment.

The **cloneContents()** method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>cloning the</u> contents of this.

To **insert** a <u>node</u> node into a <u>live range</u> range, run these steps:

- If range's <u>start node</u> is a <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> or <u>Comment node</u>, is a <u>Text node</u> whose <u>parent</u> is null, or is node, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let referenceNode be null.
- 3. If range's <u>start node</u> is a <u>Text node</u>, set referenceNode to that <u>Text node</u>.
- 4. Otherwise, set *referenceNode* to the <u>child</u> of <u>start node</u> whose <u>index</u> is <u>start</u> <u>offset</u>, and null if there is no such <u>child</u>.
- 5. Let *parent* be *range*'s <u>start node</u> if *referenceNode* is null, and *referenceNode*'s parent otherwise.
- 6. Ensure pre-insertion validity of node into parent before referenceNode.
- 7. If range's <u>start node</u> is a <u>Text node</u>, set referenceNode to the result of <u>splitting</u> it with offset range's <u>start offset</u>.
- 8. If node is referenceNode, set referenceNode to its <u>next sibling</u>.
- 9. If node's parent is non-null, then remove node.
- 10. Let *newOffset* be *parent*'s <u>length</u> if *referenceNode* is null, and *referenceNode*'s <u>index</u> otherwise.
- 11. Increase newOffset by node's <u>length</u> if node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>, and one otherwise.
- 12. Pre-insert node into parent before referenceNode.
- 13. If range is <u>collapsed</u>, then set range's <u>end</u> to (parent, newOffset).

The insertNode(node) method, when invoked, must insert node into this.

The surroundContents (newParent) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If a non-<u>Text node</u> is <u>partially contained</u> in <u>this</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidStateError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If newParent is a <u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, or <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

#### Note

For historical reasons <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment nodes</u> are not checked here and end up throwing later on as a side effect.

- 3. Let *fragment* be the result of <u>extracting</u> this.
- 4. If newParent has <u>children</u>, then <u>replace all</u> with null within newParent.

- 5. Insert newParent into this.
- 6. Append fragment to newParent.
- 7. Select newParent within this.

The **cloneRange()** method, when invoked, must return a new <u>live range</u> with the same <u>start</u> and <u>end</u> as <u>this</u>.

The detach() method, when invoked, must do nothing. Note *Its functionality* (disabling a Range object) was removed, but the method itself is preserved for compatibility.

For web developers (non-normative)

## position = range . comparePoint(node, offset)

Returns -1 if the point is before the range, 0 if the point is in the range, and 1 if the point is after the range.

## intersects = range . intersectsNode(node)

Returns whether range intersects node.

The isPointInRange(node, offset) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If node's root is different from this's root, return false.
- 2. If node is a doctype, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. If offset is greater than node's <u>length</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If (node, offset) is before start or after end, return false.
- 5. Return true.

The comparePoint(node, offset) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If node's <u>root</u> is different from <u>this</u>'s <u>root</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>WrongDocumentError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If node is a doctype, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. If *offset* is greater than *node*'s <u>length</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If (*node*, *offset*) is <u>before</u> <u>start</u>, return −1.
- 5. If (node, offset) is after end, return 1.
- 6. Return 0.

The **intersectsNode**(*node*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *node*'s <u>root</u> is different from <u>this</u>'s <u>root</u>, return false.
- 2. Let parent be node's parent.
- 3. If parent is null, return true.
- 4. Let offset be node's index.

- 5. If (parent, offset) is <u>before end</u> and (parent, offset plus 1) is <u>after start</u>, return true.
- 6. Return false.

## The **stringification behavior** must run these steps:

- 1. Let *s* be the empty string.
- 2. If <u>this</u>'s <u>start node</u> is <u>this</u>'s <u>end node</u> and it is a <u>Text node</u>, then return the substring of that <u>Text node</u>'s <u>data</u> beginning at <u>this</u>'s <u>start offset</u> and ending at <u>this</u>'s <u>end offset</u>.
- 3. If <u>this</u>'s <u>start node</u> is a <u>Text node</u>, then append the substring of that <u>node</u>'s <u>data</u> from <u>this</u>'s <u>start offset</u> until the end to s.
- 4. Append the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of all <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u> that are <u>contained</u> in <u>this</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, to *s*.
- 5. If <u>this</u>'s <u>end node</u> is a <u>Text node</u>, then append the substring of that <u>node</u>'s <u>data</u> from its start until <u>this</u>'s <u>end offset</u> to s.
- 6. Return s.

#### Note

The <a href="mailto:createContextualFragment">createContextualFragment</a>(), <a href="mailto:getClientRects">getClientRects</a>(), and <a href="mailto:getBoundingClientRect">getBoundingClientRect</a>() <a href="mailto:methods">methods</a> are defined in other specifications. <a href="mailto:[DOM-Parsing">[DOM-VIEW]</a>)

## 6. Traversal

NodeIterator and TreeWalker objects can be used to filter and traverse node trees.

Each <u>NodeIterator</u> and <u>TreeWalker</u> object has an associated **active flag** to avoid recursive invocations. It is initially unset.

Each <u>NodeIterator</u> and <u>TreeWalker</u> object also has an associated **root** (a <u>node</u>), a **whatToShow** (a bitmask), and a **filter** (a callback).

To **filter** a <u>node</u> *node* within a <u>NodeIterator</u> or <u>TreeWalker</u> object *traverser*, run these steps:

- If traverser's <u>active flag</u> is set, then throw an "<u>InvalidStateError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let n be node's nodeType attribute value -1.
- 3. If the  $n^{th}$  bit (where 0 is the least significant bit) of traverser's what ToShow is not set, then return FILTER SKIP.
- 4. If traverser's filter is null, then return FILTER\_ACCEPT.
- 5. Set traverser's active flag.
- 6. Let result be the return value of <u>call a user object's operation</u> with traverser's <u>filter</u>, "acceptNode", and « node ». If this throws an exception, then unset traverser's <u>active flag</u> and rethrow the exception.
- 7. Unset traverser's active flag.
- 8. Return result.

## 6.1. Interface NodeIterator

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface NodeIterator {
   [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
   readonly attribute Node referenceNode;
   readonly attribute boolean pointerBeforeReferenceNode;
   readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
   readonly attribute NodeFilter? filter;

Node? nextNode();
Node? previousNode();
undefined detach();
};
```

#### Note

<u>NodeIterator</u> objects can be created using the <u>createNodeIterator()</u> method on <u>Document</u> objects.

Each NodeIterator object has an associated iterator collection, which is a

<u>collection</u> rooted at the <u>NodeIterator</u> object's <u>root</u>, whose filter matches any <u>node</u>.

Each <u>NodeIterator</u> object also has an associated **reference** (a <u>node</u>) and **pointer before reference** (a boolean).

#### Note

As mentioned earlier, <u>NodeIterator</u> objects have an associated <u>active flag</u>, <u>root</u>, <u>whatToShow</u>, and <u>filter</u> as well.

The **NodeIterator pre-removing steps** given a *nodeIterator* and *toBeRemovedNode*, are as follows:

- 1. If toBeRemovedNode is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of <u>nodelterator</u>'s <u>reference</u>, or toBeRemovedNode is <u>nodelterator</u>'s root, then return.
- 2. If *nodelterator*'s pointer before reference is true, then:
  - 1. Let next be toBeRemovedNode's first following node that is an inclusive descendant of nodelterator's root and is not an inclusive descendant of toBeRemovedNode, and null if there is no such node.
  - 2. If next is non-null, then set nodelterator's reference to next and return.
  - 3. Otherwise, set *nodelterator*'s pointer before reference to false.

Note

Steps are not terminated here.

3. Set nodelterator's reference to toBeRemovedNode's parent, if toBeRemovedNode's previous sibling is null, and to the inclusive descendant of toBeRemovedNode's previous sibling that appears last in tree order otherwise.

The **root** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's root.

The referenceNode attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's reference.

The **pointerBeforeReferenceNode** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's pointer before reference.

The whatToShow attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's whatToShow.

The **filter** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's filter.

To **traverse**, given a <u>NodeIterator</u> object *iterator* and a direction *direction*, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be iterator's reference.
- 2. Let *beforeNode* be *iterator*'s <u>pointer before reference</u>.
- 3. While true:
  - 1. Branch on direction:
    - → next

If beforeNode is false, then set node to the first node

<u>following</u> *node* in *iterator*'s <u>iterator</u> collection. If there is no such node, then return null.

If beforeNode is true, then set it to false.

### → previous

If *beforeNode* is true, then set *node* to the first <u>node</u> <u>preceding</u> *node* in *iterator*'s <u>iterator</u> collection. If there is no such <u>node</u>, then return null.

If beforeNode is false, then set it to true.

- 2. Let *result* be the result of <u>filtering</u> *node* within *iterator*.
- 3. If result is FILTER\_ACCEPT, then break.
- 4. Set iterator's reference to node.
- 5. Set iterator's pointer before reference to beforeNode.
- 6. Return node.

The nextNode() method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>traversing</u> with <u>this</u> and next.

The **previousNode()** method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>traversing</u> with <u>this</u> and previous.

The detach() method, when invoked, must do nothing. Note *Its functionality* (disabling a NodeIterator object) was removed, but the method itself is preserved for compatibility.

## 6.2. Interface TreeWalker

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface TreeWalker {
   [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
   readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
   readonly attribute NodeFilter? filter;
        attribute Node currentNode;

Node? parentNode();
Node? firstChild();
Node? lastChild();
Node? previousSibling();
Node? nextSibling();
Node? previousNode();
Node? nextNode();
Node? nextNode();
```

#### Note

<u>TreeWalker</u> objects can be created using the <u>createTreeWalker()</u> method on <u>Document objects</u>.

Each <u>TreeWalker</u> object has an associated **current** (a <u>node</u>).

#### Note

As mentioned earlier <u>TreeWalker</u> objects have an associated <u>root</u>, <u>whatToShow</u>, and <u>filter</u> as well.

The **root** attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's root.

The whatToShow attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's whatToShow.

The filter attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's filter.

The currentNode attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's current.

The <u>currentNode</u> attribute's setter, when invoked, must set <u>this</u>'s <u>current</u> to the given value.

The parentNode() method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let node be this's current.
- 2. While node is non-null and is not this's root:
  - 1. Set node to node's parent.
  - 2. If *node* is non-null and <u>filtering</u> *node* within <u>this</u> returns <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>'s <u>current</u> to *node* and return *node*.
- 3. Return null.

To **traverse children**, given a *walker* and *type*, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be walker's current.
- 2. Set node to node's first child if type is first, and node's last child if type is last.
- 3. While node is non-null:
  - 1. Let result be the result of filtering node within walker.
  - 2. If result is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set walker's <u>current</u> to node and return node.
  - 3. If result is <u>FILTER\_SKIP</u>, then:
    - 1. Let *child* be *node*'s <u>first child</u> if *type* is first, and *node*'s <u>last child</u> if *type* is last.
    - 2. If *child* is non-null, then set *node* to *child* and <u>continue</u>.
  - 4. While node is non-null:
    - 1. Let *sibling* be *node*'s <u>next sibling</u> if *type* is first, and *node*'s <u>previous sibling</u> if *type* is last.
    - 2. If sibling is non-null, then set node to sibling and break.
    - 3. Let parent be node's parent.
    - 4. If parent is null, walker's root, or walker's current, then return

null.

- 5. Set node to parent.
- 4. Return null.

The firstChild() method, when invoked, must traverse children with this and first.

The lastChild() method, when invoked, must traverse children with this and last.

To **traverse siblings**, given a *walker* and *type*, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be walker's current.
- 2. If node is root, then return null.
- 3. While true:
  - 1. Let *sibling* be *node*'s <u>next sibling</u> if *type* is next, and *node*'s <u>previous</u> <u>sibling</u> if *type* is previous.
  - 2. While sibling is non-null:
    - 1. Set node to sibling.
    - 2. Let *result* be the result of <u>filtering</u> *node* within *walker*.
    - 3. If result is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set walker's <u>current</u> to node and return node.
    - 4. Set *sibling* to *node*'s <u>first child</u> if *type* is next, and *node*'s <u>last</u> <u>child</u> if *type* is previous.
    - 5. If result is <u>FILTER REJECT</u> or sibling is null, then set sibling to node's <u>next sibling</u> if type is next, and node's <u>previous sibling</u> if type is previous.
  - 3. Set node to node's parent.
  - 4. If node is null or walker's root, then return null.
  - 5. If the return value of <u>filtering</u> *node* within *walker* is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then return null.

The nextSibling() method, when invoked, must traverse siblings with this and next.

The **previousSibling()** method, when invoked, must <u>traverse siblings</u> with <u>this</u> and previous.

The previousNode() method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let node be this's current.
- 2. While node is not this's root:
  - 1. Let sibling be node's previous sibling.
  - 2. While sibling is non-null:
    - 1. Set node to sibling.
    - 2. Let result be the result of filtering node within this.

- 3. While result is not FILTER REJECT and node has a child:
  - 1. Set node to node's last child.
  - 2. Set result to the result of filtering node within this.
- 4. If *result* is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>'s <u>current</u> to *node* and return *node*.
- 5. Set sibling to node's previous sibling.
- 3. If node is this's root or node's parent is null, then return null.
- 4. Set node to node's parent.
- 5. If the return value of <u>filtering</u> *node* within <u>this</u> is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>'s <u>current</u> to *node* and return *node*.
- 3. Return null.

The **nextNode()** method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let node be this's current.
- 2. Let result be FILTER ACCEPT.
- 3. While true:
  - 1. While result is not <u>FILTER\_REJECT</u> and node has a <u>child</u>:
    - 1. Set *node* to its <u>first child</u>.
    - 2. Set result to the result of filtering node within this.
    - 3. If *result* is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>'s <u>current</u> to *node* and return *node*.
  - 2. Let sibling be null.
  - 3. Let temporary be node.
  - 4. While *temporary* is non-null:
    - 1. If temporary is this's root, then return null.
    - 2. Set *sibling* to *temporary*'s <u>next sibling</u>.
    - 3. If sibling is non-null, then set node to sibling and break.
    - 4. Set temporary to temporary's parent.
  - 5. Set *result* to the result of <u>filtering</u> *node* within <u>this</u>.
  - 6. If result is <u>FILTER\_ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>'s <u>current</u> to node and return node.

### 6.3. Interface NodeFilter

```
[Exposed=Window]
callback interface NodeFilter {
```

```
// Constants for acceptNode()
  const unsigned short FILTER ACCEPT = 1;
  const unsigned short FILTER REJECT = 2;
  const unsigned short FILTER SKIP = 3;
  // Constants for whatToShow
  const unsigned long SHOW ALL = 0xFFFFFFF;
  const <u>unsigned long</u> SHOW <u>ELEMENT</u> = 0x1;
  const unsigned long SHOW ATTRIBUTE = 0x2;
  const unsigned long SHOW TEXT = 0x4;
  const unsigned long SHOW CDATA SECTION = 0x8;
  const unsigned long SHOW ENTITY REFERENCE = 0x10; // legacy
  const unsigned long SHOW_ENTITY = 0x20; // legacy
  const unsigned long SHOW PROCESSING INSTRUCTION = 0x40;
  const unsigned long SHOW_COMMENT = 0x80;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT = 0x100;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT TYPE = 0x200;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT FRAGMENT = 0x400;
  const unsigned long SHOW NOTATION = 0x800; // legacy
  unsigned short acceptNode(Node node);
};
```

#### Note

<u>NodeFilter</u> objects can be used as <u>filter</u> for <u>NodeIterator</u> and <u>TreeWalker</u> objects and also provide constants for their <u>whatToShow</u> bitmask. A <u>NodeFilter</u> object is typically implemented as a JavaScript function.

These constants can be used as filter return value:

```
• FILTER_ACCEPT (1);
• FILTER_REJECT (2);
• FILTER_SKIP (3).
```

These constants can be used for whatToShow:

```
SHOW_ALL (4294967295, FFFFFFFFF in hexadecimal);
SHOW_ELEMENT (1);
SHOW_ATTRIBUTE (2);
SHOW_TEXT (4);
SHOW_CDATA_SECTION (8);
SHOW_PROCESSING_INSTRUCTION (64, 40 in hexadecimal);
SHOW_COMMENT (128, 80 in hexadecimal);
SHOW_DOCUMENT (256, 100 in hexadecimal);
SHOW_DOCUMENT_TYPE (512, 200 in hexadecimal);
SHOW_DOCUMENT_FRAGMENT (1024, 400 in hexadecimal).
```

## § 7. Sets

Note

Yes, the name **DOMTokenList** is an unfortunate legacy mishap.

## 7.1. Interface <a href="DOMTokenList">DOMTokenList</a>

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMTokenList {
   readonly attribute unsigned long length;
   getter DOMString? item(unsigned long index);
   boolean contains(DOMString token);
[CEReactions] undefined add(DOMString... tokens);
[CEReactions] undefined remove(DOMString... tokens);
[CEReactions] boolean toggle(DOMString token, optional boolean force);
[CEReactions] boolean replace(DOMString token, DOMString newToken);
   boolean supports(DOMString token);
[CEReactions] stringifier attribute DOMString value;
   iterable<DOMString>;
};
```

A DOMTokenList object has an associated token set (a set), which is initially empty.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object also has an associated <u>element</u> and an <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u>.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **supported tokens** for a <u>DOMTokenList</u>'s associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u>.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object's **validation steps** for a given *token* are:

- If the associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u> does not define <u>supported tokens</u>, <u>throw</u> a TypeError.
- 2. Let *lowercase token* be a copy of *token*, in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 3. If lowercase token is present in supported tokens, return true.
- 4. Return false.

#### A **DOMTokenList** object's **update steps** are:

- 1. If the associated <u>element</u> does not have an associated <u>attribute</u> and <u>token set</u> is empty, then return.
- 2. <u>Set an attribute value</u> for the associated <u>element</u> using associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u> and the result of running the <u>ordered set serializer</u> for <u>token set</u>.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object's **serialize steps** are to return the result of running <u>get an attribute value</u> given the associated <u>element</u> and the associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u>.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object has these <u>attribute change steps</u> for its associated <u>element</u>:

- 1. If *localName* is associated attribute's <u>local name</u>, *namespace* is null, and *value* is null, then <u>empty token set</u>.
- 2. Otherwise, if *localName* is associated attribute's <u>local name</u>, *namespace* is null, then set token set to *value*, parsed.

When a **DOMTokenList** object is created, then:

- 1. Let *element* be associated *element*.
- 2. Let localName be associated attribute's local name.
- 3. Let *value* be the result of <u>getting an attribute value</u> given *element* and *localName*.
- 4. Run the attribute change steps for element, localName, value, value, and null.

For web developers (non-normative)

## tokenlist . <u>length</u>

Returns the number of tokens.

### tokenlist . item(index)

## tokenlist[index]

Returns the token with index index.

#### tokenlist . contains(token)

Returns true if *token* is present, and false otherwise.

#### tokenlist . add(tokens...)

Adds all arguments passed, except those already present.

Throws a "<u>SyntaxError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if one of the arguments is the empty string.

Throws an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if one of the arguments contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>.

### tokenlist . remove(tokens...)

Removes arguments passed, if they are present.

Throws a "<u>SyntaxError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if one of the arguments is the empty string.

Throws an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if one of the arguments contains any ASCII whitespace.

## tokenlist . toggle(token [, force])

If *force* is not given, "toggles" *token*, removing it if it's present and adding it if it's not present. If *force* is true, adds *token* (same as <u>add()</u>). If *force* is false, removes *token* (same as <u>remove()</u>).

Returns true if *token* is now present, and false otherwise.

Throws a "<u>SyntaxError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if *token* is empty.

Throws an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException if token contains any spaces.

## tokenlist . replace(token, newToken)

Replaces token with newToken.

Returns true if *token* was replaced with *newToken*, and false otherwise.

Throws a "<u>SyntaxError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if one of the arguments is the empty string.

Throws an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if one of the arguments contains any <u>ASCII</u> whitespace.

## tokenlist . supports(token)

Returns true if *token* is in the associated attribute's supported tokens. Returns false otherwise.

Throws a **TypeError** if the associated attribute has no supported tokens defined.

## tokenlist . value

Returns the associated set as string.

Can be set, to change the associated attribute.

The **length** attribute' getter must return this's token set's size.

The object's <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to object's <u>token set</u>'s <u>size</u> minus one, unless <u>token set</u> is <u>empty</u>, in which case there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The item(index) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If *index* is equal to or greater than <u>this</u>'s <u>token set</u>'s <u>size</u>, then return null.
- 2. Return this's token set[index].

The **contains**(*token*) method, when invoked, must return true if <u>this</u>'s <u>token</u> <u>set</u>[*token*] <u>exists</u>, and false otherwise.

The add(tokens...) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. For each token in tokens:
  - If token is the empty string, then throw a "SyntaxError"
     <u>DOMException</u>.
  - 2. If token contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. For each token in tokens, append token to this's token set.
- 3. Run the <u>update steps</u>.

The remove (tokens...) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. For each token in tokens:
  - 1. If *token* is the empty string, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>SyntaxError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
  - 2. If token contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. For each token in tokens, remove token from this's token set.
- 3. Run the <u>update steps</u>.

The toggle(token, force) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If token is the empty string, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 2. If *token* contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If this's token set[token] exists, then:
  - 1. If *force* is either not given or is false, then <u>remove</u> *token* from <u>this</u>'s <u>token set</u>, run the <u>update steps</u> and return false.
  - 2. Return true.
- 4. Otherwise, if *force* not given or is true, <u>append</u> *token* to <u>this</u>'s <u>token set</u>, run the <u>update steps</u>, and return true.
- 5. Return false.

#### Note

The <u>update steps</u> are not always run for <u>toggle()</u> for web compatibility.

The replace(token, newToken) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If either token or newToken is the empty string, then <a href="throw">throw</a> a "SyntaxError"

  DOMException.
- 2. If either token or newToken contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If <u>this</u>'s <u>token set</u> does not <u>contain</u> *token*, then return false.
- 4. Replace token in this's token set with newToken.
- 5. Run the update steps.
- 6. Return true.

#### Note

The <u>update steps</u> are not always run for <u>replace()</u> for web compatibility.

The **supports** (*token*) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let *result* be the return value of <u>validation steps</u> called with *token*.
- 2. Return result.

The value attribute must return the result of running this's serialize steps.

Setting the <u>value</u> attribute must <u>set an attribute value</u> for the associated <u>element</u> using associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u> and the given value.

DOM Level 3 XPath defined an API for evaluating XPath 1.0 expressions. These APIs are widely implemented, but have not been maintained. The interface definitions are maintained here so that they can be updated when Web IDL changes. Complete definitions of these APIs remain necessary and such work is tracked and can be contributed to in <a href="whatwg/dom#67">whatwg/dom#67</a>. [DOM-Level-3-XPath] [XPath] [WEBIDL]

## 8.1. Interface XPathResult

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface XPathResult {
  const unsigned short ANY TYPE = 0;
  const unsigned short NUMBER_TYPE = 1;
  const unsigned short STRING TYPE = 2;
  const unsigned short BOOLEAN_TYPE = 3;
  const unsigned short UNORDERED_NODE_ITERATOR_TYPE = 4;
  const unsigned short ORDERED_NODE ITERATOR TYPE = 5;
  const unsigned short UNORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE = 6;
  const unsigned short ORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE = 7;
  const unsigned short ANY_UNORDERED_NODE_TYPE = 8;
  const unsigned short FIRST ORDERED NODE TYPE = 9;
  readonly attribute unsigned short resultType;
  readonly attribute unrestricted double numberValue;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> stringValue;
  readonly attribute boolean booleanValue;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="singleNodeValue">singleNodeValue</a>;
  readonly attribute boolean invalidIteratorState;
  readonly attribute unsigned long snapshotLength;
  Node? iterateNext();
  Node? snapshotItem(unsigned long index);
};
```

## § 8.2. Interface <u>XPathExpression</u>

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface XPathExpression {
   // XPathResult.ANY_TYPE = 0
   XPathResult evaluate(Node contextNode, optional unsigned short type = 0, optional XPathResult? result = null);
};
```

## 8.3. Mixin XPathEvaluatorBase

```
callback interface XPathNSResolver {
   DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI(DOMString? prefix);
};

interface mixin XPathEvaluatorBase {
   [NewObject] XPathExpression createExpression(DOMString expression, optional XPathNSResolver? resolver = null);
   XPathNSResolver createNSResolver(Node nodeResolver);
   // XPathResult.ANY_TYPE = 0
   XPathResult evaluate(DOMString expression, Node contextNode, optional XPathNSResolver? resolver = null, optional unsigned short type = 0, optional XPathResult? result = null);
};
Document includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
```

## **8.4. Interface XPathEvaluator**

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface XPathEvaluator {
  constructor();
};

XPathEvaluator includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
```

#### Note

For historical reasons you can both construct XPathEvaluator and access the same methods on Document.

## 9. Historical

8

This standard used to contain several interfaces and interface members that have been removed.

These interfaces have been removed:

- DOMConfiguration
- DOMError
- DOMErrorHandler
- DOMImplementationList
- DOMImplementationSource
- DOMLocator
- DOMObject
- DOMUserData
- Entity
- EntityReference
- MutationEvent
- MutationNameEvent
- NameList
- Notation
- RangeException
- TypeInfo
- UserDataHandler

And these interface members have been removed:

#### <u>Attr</u>

- schemaTypeInfo
- isId

### **Document**

- createEntityReference()
- xmlEncoding
- xmlStandalone
- xmlVersion
- strictErrorChecking
- domConfig
- normalizeDocument()
- renameNode()

## **DocumentType**

- entities
- notations
- internalSubset

## **DOMImplementation**

getFeature()

## **Element**

- schemaTypeInfo
- setIdAttribute()
- setIdAttributeNS()
- setIdAttributeNode()

## **Node**

- isSupported
- getFeature()
- getUserData()
- setUserData()

## **NodeIterator**

• expandEntityReferences

## <u>Text</u>

- isElementContentWhitespace replaceWholeText()

# <u>TreeWalker</u>

• expandEntityReferences

## Acknowledgments

There have been a lot of people that have helped make DOM more interoperable over the years and thereby furthered the goals of this standard. Likewise many people have helped making this standard what it is today.

With that, many thanks to Adam Klein, Adrian Bateman, Ahmid snuggs, Alex Komoroske, Alex Russell, Alexey Shvayka, Andreu Botella, Anthony Ramine, Arkadiusz Michalski, Arnaud Le Hors, Arun Ranganathan, Benjamin Gruenbaum, Björn Höhrmann, Boris Zbarsky, Brandon Payton, Brandon Slade, Brandon Wallace, Brian Kardell, C. Scott Ananian, Cameron McCormack, Chris Dumez, Chris Paris, Chris Rebert, Cyrille Tuzi, Dan Burzo, Daniel Glazman, Darin Fisher, David Bruant, David Flanagan, David Håsäther, David Hyatt, Deepak Sherveghar, Dethe Elza, Dimitri Glazkov, Domenic Denicola, Dominic Cooney, Dominique Hazaël-Massieux, Don Jordan, Doug Schepers, Edgar Chen, Elisée Maurer, Elliott Sprehn, Emilio Cobos Álvarez, Eric Bidelman, Erik Arvidsson, Gary Kacmarcik, Gavin Nicol, Giorgio Liscio, Glen Huang, Glenn Adams, Glenn Maynard, Hajime Morrita, Harald Alvestrand, Hayato Ito, Henri Sivonen, Hongchan Choi, Hunan Rostomyan, Ian Hickson, Igor Bukanov, Jacob Rossi, Jake Archibald, Jake Verbaten, James Graham, James Greene, James M Snell, James Robinson, Jeffrey Yasskin, Jens Lindström, Jesse McCarthy, Jinho Bang, João Eiras, Joe Kesselman, John Atkins, John Dai, Jonas Sicking, Jonathan Kingston, Jonathan Robie, Joris van der Wel, Joshua Bell, J. S. Choi, Jungkee Song, Justin Summerlin, Kagami Sascha Rosylight, 呂康豪 (Kang-Hao Lu), 田村健人 (Kent TAMURA), Kevin J. Sung, Kevin Sweeney, Kirill Topolyan, Koji Ishii, Lachlan Hunt, Lauren Wood, Luke Zielinski, Magne Andersson, Majid Valipour, Malte Ubl, Manish Goregaokar, Manish Tripathi, Marcos Caceres, Mark Miller, Martijn van der Ven, Mats Palmgren, Mounir Lamouri, Michael Stramel, Michael™ Smith, Mike Champion, Mike Taylor, Mike West, Ojan Vafai, Oliver Nightingale, Olli Pettay, Ondřej Žára, Peter Sharpe, Philip Jägenstedt, Philippe Le Hégaret, Piers Wombwell, Pierre-Marie Dartus, prosody—Gab Vereable Context(, Rafael Weinstein, Rakina Zata Amni, Richard Bradshaw, Rick Byers, Rick Waldron, Robbert Broersma, Robin Berjon, Roland Steiner, Rune F. Halvorsen, Russell Bicknell, Ruud Steltenpool, Ryosuke Niwa, Sam Dutton, Sam Sneddon, Samuel Giles, Sanket Joshi, Sebastian Mayr, Seo Sanghyeon, Sergey G. Grekhov, Shiki Okasaka, Shinya Kawanaka, Simon Pieters, Stef Busking, Steve Byrne, Stig Halvorsen, Tab Atkins, Takashi Sakamoto, Takayoshi Kochi, Theresa O'Connor, Theodore Dubois, timeless, Timo Tijhof, Tobie Langel, Tom Pixley, Travis Leithead, Trevor Rowbotham, triple-underscore, Veli Şenol, Vidur Apparao, Warren He, Xidorn Quan, Yash Handa, Yehuda Katz, Yoav Weiss, Yoichi Osato, Yoshinori Sano, Yusuke Abe, and Zack Weinberg for being awesome!

This standard is written by <u>Anne van Kesteren</u> (<u>Mozilla</u>, <u>annevk@annevk.nl</u>) with substantial contributions from Aryeh Gregor (<u>ayg@aryeh.name</u>) and Ms2ger (<u>ms2ger@gmail.com</u>).

# **Intellectual property rights**

Part of the revision history of the integration points related to <u>custom</u> elements can be found in <u>the w3c/webcomponents repository</u>, which is available under the <u>W3C</u> Software and Document License.

Copyright © WHATWG (Apple, Google, Mozilla, Microsoft). This work is licensed under a <u>Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License</u>.

This is the Living Standard. Those interested in the patent-review version should view the <u>Living Standard Review Draft</u>.

### § Index

## Terms defined by this specification

- <u>abort</u>, in §3.2
- abort()
  - method for AbortController, in §3.1
  - o method for AbortSignal, in §3.2
- abort algorithms, in §3.2
- AbortController, in §3.1
- AbortController(), in §3.1
- aborted, in §3.2
- aborted flag, in §3.2
- AbortSignal, in §3.2
- AbstractRange, in §5.3
- acceptNode(node), in §6.3
- <u>activation behavior</u>, in §2.7
- active flag, in §6
- add, in §3.2
- add(), in §7.1
- add an event listener, in §2.7
- addedNodes, in §4.3.3
- AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- addEventListener(type, callback), in §2.7
- addEventListener(type, callback, options), in §2.7
- <u>add(...tokens</u>), in §7.1
- add(tokens), in §7.1
- adopt, in §4.5
- adopting steps, in §4.5
- adoptNode(node), in §4.5
- after, in §5.2
- after(), in §4.2.8
- <u>after(...nodes</u>), in §4.2.8
- ancestor, in §1.1
- ANY TYPE, in §8.1
- ANY UNORDERED NODE TYPE, in §8.1
- append, in §4.2.3
- <u>append()</u>, in §4.2.6
- append an attribute, in §4.9
- appendChild(node), in §4.4
- <u>appendData(data)</u>, in §4.10
- <u>append(...nodes</u>), in §4.2.6
- append to an event path, in §2.9
- assign a slot, in §4.2.2.4
- <u>assigned</u>, in §4.2.2.2
- assigned nodes, in §4.2.2.1
- assigned slot, in §4.2.2.2
- assignedSlot, in §4.2.9
- assign slottables, in §4.2.2.4
- assign slottables for a tree, in §4.2.2.4
- attachShadow(init), in §4.9
- AT\_TARGET, in §2.2
- Attr, in §4.9.2
- attribute, in §4.9.2
- attribute change steps, in §4.9
- attributeFilter, in §4.3.1

- attribute list
  - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
  - o dfn for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
- attributeName, in §4.3.3
- attributeNamespace, in §4.3.3
- ATTRIBUTE NODE, in §4.4
- attributeOldValue, in §4.3.1
- attributes
  - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
  - o dict-member for MutationObserverInit, in §4.3.1
- available to element internals, in §4.8
- baseURI, in §4.4
- before, in §5.2
- before(), in §4.2.8
- <u>before(...nodes</u>), in §4.2.8
- BOOLEAN TYPE, in §8.1
- booleanValue, in §8.1
- boundary point, in §5.2
- bubbles
  - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
  - o dict-member for EventInit, in §2.2
- BUBBLING PHASE, in §2.2
- callback
  - o dfn for MutationObserver, in §4.3.1
  - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
- cancelable
  - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
  - o dict-member for EventInit, in §2.2
- cancelBubble, in §2.2
- canceled flag, in §2.2
- capture
  - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
  - o dict-member for EventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- CAPTURING PHASE, in §2.2
- CDATASection, in §4.12
- CDATA SECTION NODE, in §4.4
- change an attribute, in §4.9
- CharacterData, in §4.10
- characterData, in §4.3.1
- characterDataOldValue, in §4.3.1
- characterSet, in §4.5
- charset, in §4.5
- <u>child</u>, in §1.1
- childElementCount, in §4.2.6
- childList, in §4.3.1
- ChildNode, in §4.2.8
- childNodes, in §4.4
- children
  - attribute for ParentNode, in §4.2.6
  - o dfn for tree, in §1.1
- children changed steps, in §4.2.3
- child text content, in §4.11
- class, in §4.9
- classList, in §4.9
- className, in §4.9
- clone, in §4.4

- clone a node, in §4.4
- cloneContents(), in §5.5
- cloneNode(), in §4.4
- <a href="mailto:cloneNode">cloneNode</a>(<a href="mailto:deep">deep</a>), in §4.4
- cloneRange(), in §5.5
- clone the contents, in §5.5
- cloning steps, in §4.4
- cloning the contents, in §5.5
- "closed", in §4.8
- closed-shadow-hidden, in §4.8
- closest(selectors), in §4.9
- collapse(), in §5.5
- collapsed
  - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
  - o dfn for range, in §5.3
- collapse(toStart), in §5.5
- collection, in §4.2.10
- Comment, in §4.14
- Comment(), in §4.14
- Comment(data), in §4.14
- COMMENT NODE, in §4.4
- commonAncestorContainer, in §5.5
- compareBoundaryPoints(how, sourceRange), in §5.5
- compareDocumentPosition(other), in §4.4
- comparePoint(node, offset), in §5.5
- compatMode, in §4.5
- composed
  - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
  - o dict-member for EventInit, in §2.2
  - o dict-member for GetRootNodeOptions, in §4.4
- composed flag, in §2.2
- composedPath(), in §2.2
- connected, in §4.2.2
- constructor, in §2.5
- constructor()
  - o constructor for AbortController, in §3.1
  - o constructor for Comment, in §4.14
  - o constructor for Document, in §4.5
  - constructor for DocumentFragment, in §4.7
  - constructor for EventTarget, in §2.7
  - o constructor for Range, in §5.5
  - o constructor for Text, in §4.11
  - o constructor for XPathEvaluator, in §8.4
- constructor(callback), in §4.3.1
- constructor(data)
  - o constructor for Comment, in §4.14
  - o constructor for Text, in §4.11
- constructor(init), in §5.4
- constructor(type)
  - o constructor for CustomEvent, in §2.4
  - o constructor for Event, in §2.2
- constructor(type, eventInitDict)
  - o constructor for CustomEvent, in §2.4
  - o constructor for Event, in §2.2
- contained, in §5.5
- contains(other), in §4.4

- contains(token), in §7.1
- content type, in §4.5
- contentType, in §4.5
- context object, in §1
- contiguous exclusive Text nodes, in §4.11
- contiguous Text nodes, in §4.11
- converting nodes into a node, in §4.2.6
- create an element, in §4.9
- create an event, in §2.5
- createAttribute(localName), in §4.5
- createAttributeNS(namespace, qualifiedName), in §4.5
- createCDATASection(data), in §4.5
- createComment(data), in §4.5
- createDocumentFragment(), in §4.5
- createDocument(namespace, qualifiedName), in §4.5.1
- createDocument(namespace, qualifiedName, doctype), in §4.5.1
- createDocumentType(qualifiedName, publicId, systemId), in §4.5.1
- createElement(localName), in §4.5
- createElement(localName, options), in §4.5
- <a href="mailto:createElementNS">createElementNS</a>(<a href="namespace">namespace</a>, <a href="qualifiedName">qualifiedName</a>), in §4.5
- <u>createElementNS(namespace, qualifiedName, options</u>), in §4.5
- createEntityReference(), in §9
- createEvent(interface), in §4.5
- <u>createExpression(expression</u>), in §8.3
- createExpression(expression, resolver), in §8.3
- createHTMLDocument(), in §4.5.1
- createHTMLDocument(title), in §4.5.1
- createNodeIterator(root), in §4.5
- createNodeIterator(root, whatToShow), in §4.5
- <a href="mailto:createNodelterator">createNodelterator</a>(<a href="mailto:root, whatToShow, filter">root, whatToShow, filter</a>), in §4.5
- createNSResolver(nodeResolver), in §8.3
- createProcessingInstruction(target, data), in §4.5
- createRange(), in §4.5
- <a href="mailto:createTextNode">createTextNode</a>(<a href="mailto:data">data</a>), in §4.5
- createTreeWalker(root), in §4.5
- <a href="mailto:createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow">createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow</a>), in §4.5
- createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow, filter), in §4.5
- creating an element, in §4.9
- creating an event, in §2.5
- current, in §6.2
- current event, in §2.3
- <u>currentNode</u>, in §6.2
- currentTarget, in §2.2
- custom, in §4.9
- custom element definition, in §4.9
- <u>custom element state</u>, in §4.9
- CustomEvent, in §2.4
- CustomEventInit, in §2.4
- CustomEvent(type), in §2.4
- <u>CustomEvent(type, eventInitDict</u>), in §2.4
- data
- attribute for CharacterData, in §4.10
- o dfn for CharacterData, in §4.10
- defaultPrevented, in §2.2
- defined, in §4.9
- delegates focus, in §4.8

- delegatesFocus, in §4.9
- deleteContents(), in §5.5
- deleteData(offset, count), in §4.10
- descendant, in §1.1
- descendant text content, in §4.11
- detach()
  - o method for Nodelterator, in §6.1
  - method for Range, in §5.5
- detail
  - o attribute for CustomEvent, in §2.4
  - o dict-member for CustomEventInit, in §2.4
- disconnect(), in §4.3.1
- dispatch, in §2.9
- dispatchEvent(event), in §2.7
- dispatch flag, in §2.2
- doctype
  - o attribute for Document, in §4.5
  - o definition of, in §4.6
- Document, in §4.5
- document, in §4.5
- Document(), in §4.5
- document element, in §4.2.1
- documentElement, in §4.5
- <u>DocumentFragment</u>, in §4.7
- DocumentFragment(), in §4.7
- DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT NODE, in §4.4
- DocumentOrShadowRoot, in §4.2.5
- DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING, in §4.4
- document tree, in §4.2.1
- DocumentType, in §4.6
- DOCUMENT TYPE NODE, in §4.4
- documentURI, in §4.5
- domConfig, in §9
- DOMConfiguration, in §9
- DOMError, in §9
- **DOMErrorHandler**, in §9
- DOMImplementation, in §4.5.1
- DOMImplementationList, in §9
- DOMImplementationSource, in §9
- DOMLocator, in §9
- DOMObject, in §9
- DOMTokenList, in §7.1
- DOMUserData, in §9
- Element, in §4.9
- element
  - definition of, in §4.9
  - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o dfn for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
- ElementCreationOptions, in §4.5
- element interface, in §4.5

- ELEMENT NODE, in §4.4
- empty, in §4.2
- encoding, in §4.5
- end, in §5.3
- endContainer
  - o attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
  - o dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- end node, in §5.3
- end offset, in §5.3
- endOffset
  - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
  - o dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- END TO END, in §5.5
- END TO START, in §5.5
- ensure pre-insertion validity, in §4.2.3
- entities, in §9
- Entity, in §9
- ENTITY\_NODE, in §4.4
- EntityReference, in §9
- ENTITY\_REFERENCE\_NODE, in §4.4
- equal, in §5.2
- equals, in §4.4
- evaluate(contextNode), in §8.2
- <u>evaluate(contextNode, type)</u>, in §8.2
- evaluate(contextNode, type, result), in §8.2
- evaluate(expression, contextNode), in §8.3
- evaluate(expression, contextNode, resolver), in §8.3
- evaluate(expression, contextNode, resolver, type), in §8.3
- evaluate(expression, contextNode, resolver, type, result), in §8.3
- **Event**, in §2.2
- event
  - attribute for Window, in §2.3
  - o definition of, in §2.2
- event constructing steps, in §2.5
- EventInit, in §2.2
- event listener, in §2.7
- EventListener, in §2.7
- event listener list, in §2.7
- EventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- eventPhase, in §2.2
- EventTarget, in §2.7
- EventTarget(), in §2.7
- <u>Event(type</u>), in §2.2
- Event(type, eventInitDict), in §2.2
- exclusive Text node, in §4.11
- expandEntityReferences
  - o attribute for Nodelterator, in §9
  - o attribute for TreeWalker, in §9
- extract, in §5.5
- extractContents(), in §5.5
- filter
  - attribute for Nodelterator, in §6.1
  - o attribute for TreeWalker, in §6.2
  - o definition of, in §6
  - o dfn for traversal, in §6
- FILTER ACCEPT, in §6.3

- FILTER REJECT, in §6.3
- FILTER SKIP, in §6.3
- find a slot, in §4.2.2.3
- find flattened slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- finding a slot, in §4.2.2.3
- finding flattened slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- finding slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- find slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- fire an event, in §2.10
- first child, in §1.1
- firstChild, in §4.4
- firstChild(), in §6.2
- firstElementChild, in §4.2.6
- FIRST ORDERED NODE TYPE, in §8.1
- flatten, in §2.7
- flatten more, in §2.7
- follow, in §3.2
- following, in §1.1
- get an attribute by name, in §4.9
- get an attribute by namespace and local name, in §4.9
- get an attribute value, in §4.9
- getAttributeNames(), in §4.9
- getAttributeNodeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- <u>getAttributeNode(qualifiedName</u>), in §4.9
- getAttributeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- getAttribute(qualifiedName), in §4.9
- getElementById(elementId), in §4.2.4
- getElementsByClassName(classNames)
  - method for Document, in §4.5
  - method for Element, in §4.9
- getElementsByTagNameNS(namespace, localName)
  - method for Document, in §4.5
  - o method for Element, in §4.9
- getElementsByTagName(qualifiedName)
  - method for Document, in §4.5
  - o method for Element, in §4.9
- getFeature()
  - method for DOMImplementation, in §9
  - method for Node, in §9
- getNamedItemNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9.1
- getNamedItem(qualifiedName), in §4.9.1
- getRootNode(), in §4.4
- getRootNode(options), in §4.4
- GetRootNodeOptions, in §4.4
- get the parent, in §2.7
- getUserData(), in §9
- handle attribute changes, in §4.9
- <a href="mailto:handleEvent(event">handleEvent(event)</a>, in §2.7
- has an attribute, in §4.9
- hasAttributeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- <a href="mailto:hasAttribute(qualifiedName">hasAttribute(qualifiedName</a>), in §4.9
- hasAttributes(), in §4.9
- hasChildNodes(), in §4.4
- hasFeature(), in §4.5.1
- host
- attribute for ShadowRoot, in §4.8

- o dfn for DocumentFragment, in §4.7
- host-including inclusive ancestor, in §4.7
- HTMLCollection, in §4.2.10.2
- HTML document, in §4.5
- HTML-uppercased qualified name, in §4.9
- ID, in §4.9
- id, in §4.9
- implementation, in §4.5
- importNode(node), in §4.5
- importNode(node, deep), in §4.5
- in a document, in §4.2.1
- in a document tree, in §4.2.1
- inclusive ancestor, in §1.1
- inclusive descendant, in §1.1
- inclusive sibling, in §1.1
- <u>index</u>, in §1.1
- initCustomEvent(type), in §2.4
- initCustomEvent(type, bubbles), in §2.4
- initCustomEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable), in §2.4
- initCustomEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable, detail), in §2.4
- initEvent(type), in §2.2
- initEvent(type, bubbles), in §2.2
- initEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable), in §2.2
- initialize, in §2.2
- initialized flag, in §2.2
- inner event creation steps, in §2.5
- inner invoke, in §2.9
- in passive listener flag, in §2.2
- inputEncoding, in §4.5
- insert
  - definition of, in §4.2.3
  - o dfn for live range, in §5.5
- insert adjacent, in §4.9
- insertAdjacentElement(where, element), in §4.9
- insertAdjacentText(where, data), in §4.9
- insertBefore(node, child), in §4.4
- insertData(offset, data), in §4.10
- insertion steps, in §4.2.3
- insertNode(node), in §5.5
- internal createElementNS steps, in §4.5
- internalSubset, in §9
- intersectsNode(node), in §5.5
- invalidIteratorState, in §8.1
- invocation target, in §2.2
- invocation-target-in-shadow-tree, in §2.2
- <u>invoke</u>, in §2.9
- is, in §4.5
- isConnected, in §4.4
- isDefaultNamespace(namespace), in §4.4
- isElementContentWhitespace, in §9
- isEqualNode(otherNode), in §4.4
- isld, in §9
- isPointInRange(node, offset), in §5.5
- isSameNode(otherNode), in §4.4
- isSupported, in §9
- isTrusted, in §2.2

- <u>is value</u>, in §4.9
- item(index)
  - method for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
  - o method for HTMLCollection, in §4.2.10.2
  - method for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
  - o method for NodeList, in §4.2.10.1
- iterateNext(), in §8.1
- iterator collection, in §6.1
- last child, in §1.1
- lastChild, in §4.4
- lastChild(), in §6.2
- lastElementChild, in §4.2.6
- legacy-canceled-activation behavior, in §2.7
- legacy-pre-activation behavior, in §2.7
- length
  - o attribute for CharacterData, in §4.10
  - attribute for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
  - attribute for HTMLCollection, in §4.2.10.2
  - o attribute for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
  - o attribute for NodeList, in §4.2.10.1
  - o dfn for Node, in §4.2
- light tree, in §4.2.2
- limited-quirks mode, in §4.5
- list of elements with class names classNames, in §4.4
- <u>list of elements with namespace namespace and local name localName</u>, in §4.4
- list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName, in §4.4
- <u>live</u>, in §4.2.10
- <u>live collection</u>, in §4.2.10
- live ranges, in §5.5
- local name
  - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- localName
  - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
- locate a namespace, in §4.4
- locate a namespace prefix, in §4.4
- locating a namespace prefix, in §4.4
- lookupNamespaceURI(prefix)
  - method for Node, in §4.4
  - method for XPathNSResolver, in §8.3
- lookupPrefix(namespace), in §4.4
- matches(selectors), in §4.9
- mode
  - o attribute for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
  - o dfn for Document, in §4.5
  - o dfn for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
  - o dict-member for ShadowRootInit, in §4.9
- MutationCallback, in §4.3.1
- MutationEvent, in §9
- MutationNameEvent, in §9
- MutationObserver, in §4.3.1
- MutationObserver(callback), in §4.3.1
- MutationObserverInit, in §4.3.1
- mutation observer microtask queued, in §4.3

- mutation observers, in §4.3
- MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
- name
  - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o attribute for DocumentType, in §4.6
  - o dfn for DocumentType, in §4.6
  - dfn for slot, in §4.2.2.1
  - o dfn for slottable, in §4.2.2.2
- named attribute, in §4.9.2
- namedItem(key), in §4.2.10.2
- namedItem(name), in §4.2.10.2
- NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
- NameList, in §9
- namespace
  - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- namespace prefix
  - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- namespaceURI
  - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
- nextElementSibling, in §4.2.7
- nextNode()
  - method for Nodelterator, in §6.1
  - o method for TreeWalker, in §6.2
- next sibling, in §1.1
- nextSibling
  - o attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
  - attribute for Node, in §4.4
- nextSibling(), in §6.2
- Node, in §4.4
- node, in §5.2
- node document, in §4.4
- NodeFilter, in §6.3
- Nodelterator, in §6.1
- Nodelterator pre-removing steps, in §6.1
- node list, in §4.3.1
- NodeList, in §4.2.10.1
- nodeName, in §4.4
- nodes, in §4.2
- node tree, in §4.2
- nodeType, in §4.4
- nodeValue, in §4.4
- <u>NonDocumentTypeChildNode</u>, in §4.2.7
- <u>NONE</u>, in §2.2
- NonElementParentNode, in §4.2.4
- no-quirks mode, in §4.5
- normalize(), in §4.4
- normalizeDocument(), in §9
- Notation, in §9
- NOTATION NODE, in §4.4
- notations, in §9
- notify mutation observers, in §4.3
- NUMBER TYPE, in §8.1
- numberValue, in §8.1

- observer, in §4.3
- observe(target), in §4.3.1
- observe(target, options), in §4.3.1
- offset, in §5.2
- oldValue, in §4.3.3
- onabort
  - o attribute for AbortSignal, in §3.2
  - dfn for AbortSignal, in §3.2
- once
- o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
- o dict-member for AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- onslotchange
  - o attribute for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
  - o dfn for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
- <u>"open"</u>, in §4.8
- options, in §4.3
- ORDERED NODE ITERATOR TYPE, in §8.1
- ORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE, in §8.1
- ordered set parser, in §1.2
- ordered set serializer, in §1.2
- origin, in §4.5
- other applicable specifications, in §1
- ownerDocument, in §4.4
- ownerElement, in §4.9.2
- parent, in §1.1
- parent element, in §4.9
- parentElement, in §4.4
- ParentNode, in §4.2.6
- parentNode, in §4.4
- parentNode(), in §6.2
- partially contained, in §5.5
- participate, in §1.1
- participate in a tree, in §1.1
- participates in a tree, in §1.1
- passive
  - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
  - o dict-member for AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- path, in §2.2
- pointer before reference, in §6.1
- pointerBeforeReferenceNode, in §6.1
- position, in §5.2
- potential event target, in §2.2
- preceding, in §1.1
- prefix
  - attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
- pre-insert, in §4.2.3
- <u>prepend()</u>, in §4.2.6
- prepend(...nodes), in §4.2.6
- pre-remove, in §4.2.3
- preventDefault(), in §2.2
- previousElementSibling, in §4.2.7
- previousNode()
  - o method for Nodelterator, in §6.1
  - method for TreeWalker, in §6.2
- previous sibling, in §1.1

- previousSibling
  - attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
  - o attribute for Node, in §4.4
- previousSibling(), in §6.2
- ProcessingInstruction, in §4.13
- PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE, in §4.4
- public ID, in §4.6
- publicId, in §4.6
- qualified name
  - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- querySelectorAll(selectors), in §4.2.6
- querySelector(selectors), in §4.2.6
- queue a mutation observer microtask, in §4.3
- queue a mutation record, in §4.3.2
- gueue a tree mutation record, in §4.3.2
- quirks mode, in §4.5
- Range, in §5.5
- range, in §5.3
- Range(), in §5.5
- RangeException, in §9
- record queue, in §4.3.1
- reference, in §6.1
- <u>referenceNode</u>, in §6.1
- reflect, in §4.9
- registered observer, in §4.3
- registered observer list, in §4.3
- relatedTarget
  - o dfn for Event, in §2.2
  - o dfn for Event/path, in §2.2
- remove
  - definition of, in §4.2.3
  - dfn for AbortSignal, in §3.2
- remove()
  - o method for ChildNode, in §4.2.8
  - o method for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
- remove all event listeners, in §2.7
- remove an attribute, in §4.9
- remove an attribute by name, in §4.9
- remove an attribute by namespace and local name, in §4.9
- remove an event listener, in §2.7
- removeAttributeNode(attr), in §4.9
- removeAttributeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- removeAttribute(qualifiedName), in §4.9
- removeChild(child), in §4.4
- removed, in §2.7
- removedNodes, in §4.3.3
- removeEventListener(type, callback), in §2.7
- removeEventListener(type, callback, options), in §2.7
- removeNamedItemNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9.1
- removeNamedItem(qualifiedName), in §4.9.1
- remove(...tokens), in §7.1
- remove(tokens), in §7.1
- removing steps, in §4.2.3
- <u>renameNode()</u>, in §9
- <u>replace</u>, in §4.2.3

- replace all, in §4.2.3
- replace an attribute, in §4.9
- replaceChild(node, child), in §4.4
- replaceChildren(), in §4.2.6
- replaceChildren(...nodes), in §4.2.6
- replace data, in §4.10
- replaceData(offset, count, data), in §4.10
- replace(token, newToken), in §7.1
- replaceWholeText(), in §9
- replaceWith(), in §4.2.8
- replaceWith(...nodes), in §4.2.8
- represented by the collection, in §4.2.10
- resultType, in §8.1
- retarget, in §4.8
- retargeting, in §4.8
- returnValue, in §2.2
- root
- attribute for Nodelterator, in §6.1
- o attribute for TreeWalker, in §6.2
- o dfn for live range, in §5.5
- o dfn for traversal, in §6
- o dfn for tree, in §1.1
- root-of-closed-tree, in §2.2
- schemaTypeInfo
  - o attribute for Attr, in §9
  - o attribute for Element, in §9
- scope-match a selectors string, in §1.3
- <u>select</u>, in §5.5
- selectNodeContents(node), in §5.5
- selectNode(node), in §5.5
- serialize steps, in §7.1
- set an attribute, in §4.9
- set an attribute value, in §4.9
- set an existing attribute value, in §4.9.2
- setAttributeNode(attr), in §4.9
- setAttributeNodeNS(attr), in §4.9
- setAttributeNS(namespace, qualifiedName, value), in §4.9
- setAttribute(qualifiedName, value), in §4.9
- setEndAfter(node), in §5.5
- setEndBefore(node), in §5.5
- setEnd(node, offset), in §5.5
- setIdAttribute(), in §9
- setIdAttributeNode(), in §9
- setIdAttributeNS(), in §9
- setNamedItem(attr), in §4.9.1
- <u>setNamedItemNS(attr</u>), in §4.9.1
- setStartAfter(node), in §5.5
- setStartBefore(node), in §5.5
- setStart(node, offset), in §5.5
- set the canceled flag, in §2.2
- set the end, in §5.5
- set the start, in §5.5
- <u>setUserData()</u>, in §9
- shadow-adjusted target, in §2.2
- shadow host, in §4.9
- shadow-including ancestor, in §4.8

- shadow-including descendant, in §4.8
- shadow-including inclusive ancestor, in §4.8
- shadow-including inclusive descendant, in §4.8
- Shadow-including preorder, depth-first traversal, in §4.8
- shadow-including root, in §4.8
- shadow-including tree order, in §4.8
- shadow root
  - o definition of, in §4.8
  - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- ShadowRoot, in §4.8
- shadowRoot, in §4.9
- ShadowRootInit, in §4.9
- ShadowRootMode, in §4.8
- shadow tree, in §4.2.2
- SHOW ALL, in §6.3
- SHOW ATTRIBUTE, in §6.3
- SHOW CDATA SECTION, in §6.3
- SHOW COMMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW DOCUMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW DOCUMENT FRAGMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW DOCUMENT TYPE, in §6.3
- SHOW ELEMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW ENTITY, in §6.3
- SHOW ENTITY REFERENCE, in §6.3
- SHOW NOTATION, in §6.3
- SHOW PROCESSING INSTRUCTION, in §6.3
- SHOW\_TEXT, in §6.3
- sibling, in §1.1
- signal
  - o attribute for AbortController, in §3.1
  - o dfn for AbortController, in §3.1
  - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
  - o dict-member for AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- signal abort, in §3.2
- signal a slot change, in §4.2.2.5
- signal slots, in §4.2.2.5
- singleNodeValue, in §8.1
- slot
- attribute for Element, in §4.9
- o definition of, in §4.2.2.1
- slot-in-closed-tree, in §2.2
- Slottable, in §4.2.9
- slottable, in §4.2.2.2
- snapshotItem(index), in §8.1
- snapshotLength, in §8.1
- <u>source</u>, in §4.3
- specified, in §4.9.2
- split a Text node, in §4.11
- splitText(offset), in §4.11
- srcElement, in §2.2
- start, in §5.3
- startContainer
  - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
  - o dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- start node, in §5.3
- start offset, in §5.3

- startOffset
  - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
  - o dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- START TO END, in §5.5
- START TO START, in §5.5
- static collection, in §4.2.10
- StaticRange, in §5.4
- StaticRange(init), in §5.4
- StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- stopImmediatePropagation(), in §2.2
- stop immediate propagation flag, in §2.2
- stopPropagation(), in §2.2
- stop propagation flag, in §2.2
- strictErrorChecking, in §9
- stringification behavior, in §7.1
- stringificationbehavior, in §5.5
- string replace all, in §4.4
- STRING TYPE, in §8.1
- stringValue, in §8.1
- substring data, in §4.10
- <u>substringData(offset, count)</u>, in §4.10
- subtree, in §4.3.1
- supported tokens, in §7.1
- supports(token), in §7.1
- surroundContents(newParent), in §5.5
- system ID, in §4.6
- systemId, in §4.6
- tagName, in §4.9
- takeRecords(), in §4.3.1
- target
  - attribute for Event, in §2.2
  - attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
  - o attribute for ProcessingInstruction, in §4.13
  - o dfn for Event, in §2.2
  - o dfn for ProcessingInstruction, in §4.13
- Text, in §4.11
- Text(), in §4.11
- textContent, in §4.4
- <u>Text(data)</u>, in §4.11
- TEXT NODE, in §4.4
- timeStamp, in §2.2
- toggleAttribute(qualifiedName), in §4.9
- toggleAttribute(qualifiedName, force), in §4.9
- toggle(token), in §7.1
- <u>toggle(token, force)</u>, in §7.1
- token set, in §7.1
- touch target list
  - o dfn for Event, in §2.2
  - o dfn for Event/path, in §2.2
- transient registered observer, in §4.3
- traverse, in §6.1
- traverse children, in §6.2
- traverse siblings, in §6.2
- tree, in §1.1
- tree order, in §1.1
- TreeWalker, in §6.2

- type
- o attribute for Event, in §2.2
- o attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
- o dfn for Document, in §4.5
- dfn for event listener, in §2.7
- TypeInfo, in §9
- UNORDERED NODE ITERATOR TYPE, in §8.1
- UNORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE, in §8.1
- update steps, in §7.1
- URL
- attribute for Document, in §4.5
- o dfn for Document, in §4.5
- <u>UserDataHandler</u>, in §9
- validate, in §1.4
- validate and extract, in §1.4
- validation steps, in §7.1
- value
  - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
  - o attribute for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
  - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
- webkitMatchesSelector(selectors), in §4.9
- whatToShow
  - attribute for Nodelterator, in §6.1
  - o attribute for TreeWalker, in §6.2
  - o dfn for traversal, in §6
- wholeText, in §4.11
- XML document, in §4.5
- XMLDocument, in §4.5
- xmlEncoding, in §9
- xmlStandalone, in §9
- xmlVersion, in §9
- XPathEvaluator, in §8.4
- XPathEvaluator(), in §8.4
- XPathEvaluatorBase, in §8.3
- XPathExpression, in §8.2
- XPathNSResolver, in §8.3
- XPathResult, in §8.1

# **Terms defined by reference**

- [CONSOLE] defines the following terms:
  - report a warning to the console
- [CSSOM-VIEW] defines the following terms:
  - getBoundingClientRect()
  - o getClientRects()
- [ECMASCRIPT] defines the following terms:
  - realm
  - surrounding agent
- [ENCODING] defines the following terms:
  - encoding
  - o name
  - utf-8
- [HR-TIME] defines the following terms:

- DOMHighResTimeStamp
- clock resolution
- o time origin
- [HTML] defines the following terms:
  - o BeforeUnloadEvent
  - CEReactions
  - DragEvent
  - EventHandler
  - HTMLElement
  - HTMLHtmlElement
  - HTMLSlotElement
  - HTMLUnknownElement
  - HashChangeEvent
  - MessageEvent
  - StorageEvent
  - Window
  - o area
  - associated document
  - body
  - browsing context (for Document)
  - o click()
  - o constructor
  - current global object
  - custom element constructor
  - o customized built-in element
  - o disable shadow
  - o document base url
  - enqueue a custom element callback reaction
  - o enqueue a custom element upgrade reaction
  - event handler
  - event handler event type
  - event handler idl attribute
  - o global object
  - head
  - html
  - o html parser
  - o in parallel
  - input
  - local name
  - o look up a custom element definition
  - microtask
  - name
  - o opaque origin
  - o origin
  - o queue a microtask
  - relevant agent
  - o relevant global object
  - o relevant realm
  - report the exception
  - script
  - o similar-origin window agent
  - o slot
  - slotchange
  - o template
  - o title
  - o try to upgrade an element

- o upgrade an element
- o valid custom element name
- [INFRA] defines the following terms:
  - append (for set)
  - o ascii case-insensitive
  - o ascii lowercase
  - o ascii uppercase
  - o ascii whitespace
  - break
  - clone
  - o code unit
  - concatenation
  - contain
  - o continue
  - empty
  - enqueue
  - exist (for map)
  - o for each (for map)
  - o html namespace
  - o identical to
  - o insert
  - o is empty
  - o is not empty
  - length
  - o list
  - map
  - o ordered set
  - prepend
  - queue
  - o remove
  - o replace (for set)
  - o set (for map)
  - o size
  - o split on ascii whitespace
  - struct
  - o svg namespace
  - o tuple
  - o xml namespace
  - xmlns namespace
- [SELECTORS4] defines the following terms:
  - :defined
  - :scope element
  - o match a selector against a tree
  - match a selector against an element
  - o parse a selector
  - o scoping root
- [SERVICE-WORKERS] defines the following terms:
  - ServiceWorkerGlobalScope
  - o has ever been evaluated flag
  - script resource
  - service worker
  - o service worker events
  - o set of event types to handle
- [UIEVENTS] defines the following terms:
  - CompositionEvent
  - FocusEvent

- KeyboardEvent
- MouseEvent
- UIEvent
- detail
- [URL] defines the following terms:
  - o url
  - o url serializer
- [WEBIDL] defines the following terms:
  - AbortError
  - DOMException
  - DOMString
  - Exposed
  - HierarchyRequestError
  - InUseAttributeError
  - IndexSizeError
  - InvalidCharacterError
  - InvalidNodeTypeError
  - o InvalidStateError
  - LegacyNullToEmptyString
  - LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties
  - LegacyUnforgeable
  - NamespaceError
  - NewObject
  - NotFoundError
  - NotSupportedError
  - PutForwards
  - Replaceable
  - SameObject
  - SyntaxError
  - USVString
  - Unscopable
  - WrongDocumentError
  - o a new promise
  - o any
  - associated realm
  - o boolean
  - o call a user object's operation
  - construct
  - o converted to an idl value
  - dictionary
  - o identifier
  - invoke
  - o reject
  - o resolve
  - sequence
  - o short
  - supported property indices
  - supported property names
  - o this
  - o throw
  - undefined
  - o unrestricted double
  - o unsigned long
  - o unsigned short

# References

### **Normative References**

# [CONSOLE]

Dominic Farolino; Robert Kowalski; Terin Stock. Console Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://console.spec.whatwg.org/

### [DEVICE-ORIENTATION]

Rich Tibbett; et al. <u>DeviceOrientation Event Specification</u>. URL: https://w3c.github.io/deviceorientation/

### [ECMASCRIPT]

ECMAScript Language Specification. URL: https://tc39.es/ecma262/

### [ENCODING]

Anne van Kesteren. Encoding Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://encoding.spec.whatwg.org/

#### [HR-TIME]

Ilya Grigorik. High Resolution Time Level 2. URL: https://w3c.github.io/hr-time/

#### [HTML]

Anne van Kesteren; et al. HTML Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://html.spec.whatwg.org/multipage/

#### [INFRA]

Anne van Kesteren; Domenic Denicola. Infra Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://infra.spec.whatwg.org/

#### [SELECTORS4]

Elika Etemad; Tab Atkins Jr.. Selectors Level 4. URL: https://drafts.csswg.org /selectors/

#### [SERVICE-WORKERS]

Alex Russell; et al. Service Workers 1. URL: https://w3c.github.io /ServiceWorker/

# [TOUCH-EVENTS]

Doug Schepers; et al. Touch Events. URL: https://w3c.github.io/touch-events/

### [UIEVENTS]

Gary Kacmarcik; Travis Leithead; Doug Schepers. UI Events. URL: https://w3c.github.io/uievents/

# [URL]

Anne van Kesteren. URL Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://url.spec.whatwg.org/

#### [WEBIDL]

Boris Zbarsky. Web IDL. URL: https://heycam.github.io/webidl/

### [XML]

Tim Bray; et al. Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 (Fifth Edition). 26 November 2008. REC. URL: https://www.w3.org/TR/xml/

#### [XML-NAMES]

Tim Bray; et al. Namespaces in XML 1.0 (Third Edition). 8 December 2009.

REC. URL: <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/xml-names/">https://www.w3.org/TR/xml-names/</a>

# Informative References

### [CSSOM-VIEW]

Simon Pieters. CSSOM View Module. URL: <a href="https://drafts.csswg.org/cssom-view/">https://drafts.csswg.org/cssom-view/</a>

### [DOM-Level-3-XPath]

Ray Whitmer. <u>Document Object Model (DOM) Level 3 XPath Specification</u>. 3 November 2020. NOTE. URL: https://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-3-XPath/

# [DOM-Parsing]

Travis Leithead. <u>DOM Parsing and Serialization</u>. URL: <u>https://w3c.github.io/DOM-Parsing/</u>

# [FULLSCREEN]

Philip Jägenstedt. <u>Fullscreen API Standard</u>. Living Standard. URL: <u>https://fullscreen.spec.whatwg.org/</u>

# [INDEXEDDB]

Nikunj Mehta; et al. <u>Indexed Database API</u>. URL: <u>https://w3c.github.io/IndexedDB/</u>

### [XPath]

James Clark; Steven DeRose. <u>XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0</u>. 16 November 1999. REC. URL: <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-10/">https://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-10/</a>

```
[Exposed=(Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
interface Event {
  constructor(DOMString type, optional EventInit eventInitDict
= {});
  readonly attribute <u>DOMString type</u>;
  readonly attribute EventTarget? target;
  readonly attribute EventTarget? srcElement; // legacy
  readonly attribute EventTarget? currentTarget;
  sequence<EventTarget> composedPath();
  const unsigned short NONE = 0;
  const unsigned short CAPTURING_PHASE = 1;
  const unsigned short AT TARGET = 2;
  const unsigned short BUBBLING PHASE = 3;
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned short</u> <u>eventPhase</u>;
  undefined stopPropagation();
           attribute boolean cancelBubble; // legacy alias of
.stopPropagation()
  undefined stopImmediatePropagation();
  readonly attribute boolean bubbles;
  readonly attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> <a href="cancelable">cancelable</a>;
           attribute boolean returnValue; // legacy
  undefined preventDefault();
  readonly attribute boolean defaultPrevented;
  readonly attribute boolean composed;
  [LegacyUnforgeable] readonly attribute boolean isTrusted;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMHighResTimeStamp">DOMHighResTimeStamp</a>;
  undefined initEvent(DOMString type, optional boolean bubbles
= false, optional boolean cancelable = false); // legacy
};
dictionary EventInit {
  boolean bubbles = false;
  boolean cancelable = false;
  boolean composed = false;
};
partial interface Window {
  [Replaceable] readonly attribute (Event or undefined) event;
// legacy
};
[Exposed=(Window, Worker)]
interface <u>CustomEvent</u> : <u>Event</u> {
  constructor(DOMString type, optional CustomEventInit
eventInitDict = {});
  readonly attribute any detail;
```

```
undefined initCustomEvent(DOMString type, optional boolean
<u>bubbles</u> = false, optional <u>boolean</u> <u>cancelable</u> = false, optional
any detail = null); // legacy
};
dictionary CustomEventInit : EventInit {
  any detail = null;
};
[Exposed=(Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
interface EventTarget {
  constructor();
  <u>undefined</u> <u>addEventListener(DOMString type, EventListener?</u>
callback, optional (AddEventListenerOptions or boolean)
options = {});
  <u>undefined</u> <u>removeEventListener(DOMString type, EventListener?</u>
callback, optional (EventListenerOptions or boolean) options =
  boolean dispatchEvent(Event event);
};
callback interface EventListener {
  undefined handleEvent(Event event);
};
dictionary EventListenerOptions {
  boolean capture = false;
};
dictionary AddEventListenerOptions : EventListenerOptions {
  boolean passive = false;
  boolean once = false;
  AbortSignal signal;
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=(Window, Worker)]
interface AbortController {
  constructor();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute AbortSignal signal;
  undefined abort();
};
[Exposed=(Window, Worker)]
interface AbortSignal : EventTarget {
  [NewObject] static AbortSignal abort();
  readonly attribute boolean aborted;
  attribute EventHandler onabort;
};
interface mixin NonElementParentNode {
```

```
Element? getElementById(DOMString elementId);
};
<u>Document</u> includes <u>NonElementParent</u>Node;
<u>DocumentFragment includes NonElementParentNode;</u>
interface mixin DocumentOrShadowRoot {
};
<u>Document includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;</u>
ShadowRoot includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;
interface mixin ParentNode {
  [SameObject] readonly attribute HTMLCollection children;
  readonly attribute Element? firstElementChild;
  readonly attribute <u>Element</u>? <u>lastElementChild</u>;
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned long childElementCount</u>;
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined prepend((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined append((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceChildren((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  Element? querySelector(DOMString selectors);
  [NewObject] NodeList querySelectorAll(DOMString selectors);
};
Document includes ParentNode;
<u>DocumentFragment</u> includes <u>ParentNode</u>;
Element includes ParentNode;
interface mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode {
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>previous</a>Element</a>Sibling;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>nextElementSibling</a>;</a>
};
Element includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
CharacterData includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
interface mixin ChildNode {
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined before((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined after((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceWith((Node or
DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined remove();
};
DocumentType includes ChildNode;
Element includes ChildNode;
CharacterData includes ChildNode;
interface mixin Slottable {
  readonly attribute HTMLSlotElement? assignedSlot;
};
Element includes Slottable;
Text includes Slottable;
```

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface NodeList {
  getter Node? item(unsigned long index);
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  iterable<Node>;
};
[Exposed=Window, LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties]
interface HTMLCollection {
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned long length</u>;
  getter Element? item(unsigned long index);
  getter Element? namedItem(DOMString name);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface MutationObserver {
  constructor(MutationCallback callback);
  undefined observe(Node target, optional MutationObserverInit
options = {});
  undefined disconnect();
  sequence<MutationRecord> takeRecords();
};
callback MutationCallback = undefined
(sequence<MutationRecord> mutations, MutationObserver
observer);
dictionary MutationObserverInit {
  boolean childList = false;
  boolean attributes;
  boolean characterData;
  boolean subtree = false;
  boolean attributeOldValue;
  boolean characterDataOldValue;
  sequence<DOMString> attributeFilter;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface MutationRecord {
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString type">DOMString type</a>;
  [SameObject] readonly attribute Node target;
  [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList addedNodes;
  [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList removedNodes;
  readonly attribute Node? previousSibling;
  readonly attribute Node? nextSibling;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="attributeName">attributeName</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="attributeNamespace">attributeNamespace</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString? oldValue;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface Node : EventTarget {
  const unsigned short ELEMENT NODE = 1;
```

```
const unsigned short ATTRIBUTE NODE = 2;
  const unsigned short TEXT NODE = 3;
  const unsigned short CDATA SECTION NODE = 4;
  const unsigned short ENTITY REFERENCE NODE = 5; // legacy
  const unsigned short ENTITY_NODE = 6; // legacy
  const unsigned short PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE = 7;
  const unsigned short COMMENT NODE = 8;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT NODE = 9;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT TYPE NODE = 10;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE = 11;
  const unsigned short NOTATION NODE = 12; // legacy
  readonly attribute unsigned short nodeType;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> <a href="nodeName">nodeName</a>;
  readonly attribute USVString baseURI;
  readonly attribute boolean isConnected;
  readonly attribute Document? ownerDocument;
  Node getRootNode(optional GetRootNodeOptions options = {});
  readonly attribute Node? parentNode;
  readonly attribute Element? parentElement;
  boolean hasChildNodes();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList childNodes;
  readonly attribute Node? firstChild;
  readonly attribute Node? lastChild;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="previousSibling">previousSibling</a>;
  readonly attribute Node? nextSibling;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString? nodeValue;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString? textContent;
  [CEReactions] undefined normalize();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node cloneNode(optional boolean
deep = false);
  boolean isEqualNode(Node? otherNode);
  boolean isSameNode(Node? otherNode); // legacy alias of ===
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED = 0x01;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING = 0x02;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING = 0x04;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS = 0x08;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY = 0x10;
  const <u>unsigned short</u>
<u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> = 0x20;
  unsigned short compareDocumentPosition(Node other);
  boolean contains(Node? other);
  DOMString? lookupPrefix(DOMString? namespace);
  DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI(DOMString? prefix);
  boolean isDefaultNamespace(DOMString? namespace);
  [CEReactions] Node insertBefore(Node node, Node? child);
  [CEReactions] Node appendChild(Node node);
  [CEReactions] Node replaceChild(Node node, Node child);
  [CEReactions] Node removeChild(Node child);
```

```
};
dictionary GetRootNodeOptions {
  boolean composed = false;
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface Document : Node {
  constructor();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute DOMImplementation
implementation;
  readonly attribute <u>USVString URL</u>;
  readonly attribute <u>USVString</u> <u>documentURI</u>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> <a href="compatMode">compatMode</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> <a href="characterSet">characterSet</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> charset; // legacy alias of
.characterSet
  readonly attribute DOMString inputEncoding; // legacy alias
of .characterSet
  readonly attribute <u>DOMString contentType</u>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DocumentType">DocumentType</a>? <a href="doctype">doctype</a>;
  readonly attribute <u>Element</u>? <u>documentElement</u>;
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagName(DOMString
qualifiedName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString localName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByClassName(DOMString classNames);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElement(DOMString)
localName, optional (DOMString or ElementCreationOptions)
options = {});
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElementNS(DOMString?
namespace, DOMString qualifiedName, optional (DOMString or
ElementCreationOptions = {});
  [NewObject] DocumentFragment createDocumentFragment();
  [NewObject] Text createTextNode(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] CDATASection createCDATASection(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] Comment createComment(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] ProcessingInstruction
createProcessingInstruction(DOMString target, DOMString data);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node importNode(Node node, optional
boolean deep = false);
  [CEReactions] Node adoptNode(Node node);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttribute(DOMString localName);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString qualifiedName);
  [NewObject] Event createEvent(DOMString interface); //
legacy
  [NewObject] Range createRange();
```

```
// NodeFilter.SHOW ALL = 0xFFFFFFF
  [NewObject] NodeIterator createNodeIterator(Node root,
optional <u>unsigned long whatToShow</u> = 0xFFFFFFF, optional
NodeFilter? filter = null);
  [NewObject] TreeWalker createTreeWalker(Node root, optional
unsigned long whatToShow = 0xFFFFFFFF, optional NodeFilter?
filter = null);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface XMLDocument : Document {};
dictionary ElementCreationOptions {
  DOMString is;
}:
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMImplementation {
  [NewObject] DocumentType createDocumentType(DOMString
qualifiedName, DOMString publicId, DOMString systemId);
  [NewObject] XMLDocument createDocument(DOMString? namespace,
[LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString gualifiedName, optional
DocumentType? doctype = null);
  [NewObject] Document createHTMLDocument(optional DOMString
title);
  boolean hasFeature(); // useless; always returns true
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface DocumentType : Node {
  readonly attribute DOMString name;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> publicId;
  readonly attribute DOMString systemId;
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface DocumentFragment : Node {
  constructor();
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface ShadowRoot : DocumentFragment {
  readonly attribute ShadowRootMode mode;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a> <a>host</a>;</a>
  attribute EventHandler onslotchange;
};
enum ShadowRootMode { "open", "closed" };
[Exposed=Window]
interface Element : Node {
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString?namespaceURI">DOMString?namespaceURI</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString? prefix;
```

```
readonly attribute <a href="DOMString localName">DOMString localName</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString tagName;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString id;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString className;
  [SameObject, PutForwards=value] readonly attribute
DOMTokenList classList;
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] attribute DOMString slot;
  boolean hasAttributes();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute NamedNodeMap attributes;
  sequence<DOMString> getAttributeNames();
  DOMString? getAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName);
  DOMString? getAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  [CEReactions] undefined setAttribute(DOMString
qualifiedName, DOMString value);
  [CEReactions] undefined setAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString value);
  [CEReactions] undefined removeAttribute(DOMString
qualifiedName);
  [CEReactions] undefined removeAttributeNS(DOMString?
namespace, DOMString localName);
  [CEReactions] boolean toggleAttribute(DOMString
qualifiedName, optional boolean force);
  boolean hasAttribute(DOMString gualifiedName);
  boolean hasAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  Attr? getAttributeNode(DOMString qualifiedName);
  Attr? getAttributeNodeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNode(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNodeNS(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr removeAttributeNode(Attr attr);
  ShadowRoot attachShadow(ShadowRootInit init);
  readonly attribute ShadowRoot? shadowRoot;
  Element? closest(DOMString selectors);
  boolean matches(DOMString selectors);
  boolean webkitMatchesSelector(DOMString selectors); //
legacy alias of .matches
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagName(DOMString
qualifiedName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString localName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByClassName(DOMString classNames);
  [CEReactions] Element? insertAdjacentElement(DOMString
where, Element element); // legacy
  undefined insertAdjacentText(DOMString where, DOMString
data); // legacy
};
```

```
dictionary ShadowRootInit {
  required <a href="ShadowRootMode">ShadowRootMode</a> mode;
  boolean delegatesFocus = false;
};
[Exposed=Window,
 <u>LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties</u>]
interface NamedNodeMap {
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  getter Attr? item(unsigned_long_index);
  getter Attr? getNamedItem(DOMString qualifiedName);
  Attr? getNamedItemNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString
localName);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setNamedItem(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setNamedItemNS(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr removeNamedItem(DOMString qualifiedName);
  [CEReactions] Attr removeNamedItemNS(DOMString? namespace,
DOMString localName);
}:
[Exposed=Window]
interface Attr : Node {
  readonly attribute DOMString? namespaceURI;
  readonly attribute DOMString? prefix;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString localName">DOMString localName</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString name;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString value;
  readonly attribute Element? ownerElement;
  readonly attribute boolean specified; // useless; always
returns true
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface CharacterData : Node {
  attribute [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString data;
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  <u>DOMString substringData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long</u>
count);
  undefined appendData(DOMString data);
  undefined insertData(unsigned long offset, DOMString data);
  undefined deleteData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long
count);
  undefined replaceData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long
count, DOMString data);
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface Text : CharacterData {
  constructor(optional DOMString data = "");
  [NewObject] Text splitText(unsigned long offset);
  readonly attribute DOMString wholeText;
};
```

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface CDATASection : Text {
[Exposed=Window]
interface ProcessingInstruction : CharacterData {
  readonly attribute DOMString target;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface Comment : CharacterData {
  constructor(optional DOMString data = "");
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface AbstractRange {
  readonly attribute Node startContainer;
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned long startOffset</u>;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a> <a href="endContainer">endContainer</a>;
  readonly attribute unsigned long endOffset;
  readonly attribute boolean collapsed;
};
dictionary StaticRangeInit {
  required Node startContainer;
  required <u>unsigned long</u> <u>startOffset</u>;
  required Node endContainer;
  required unsigned long endOffset;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface StaticRange : AbstractRange {
  constructor(StaticRangeInit init);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface Range : AbstractRange {
  constructor();
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a> <a href="commonAncestorContainer">commonAncestorContainer</a>;
  undefined setStart(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  undefined setEnd(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  undefined setStartBefore(Node node);
  undefined setStartAfter(Node node);
  undefined setEndBefore(Node node);
  undefined setEndAfter(Node node);
  undefined collapse(optional boolean toStart = false);
  undefined selectNode(Node node);
  undefined selectNodeContents(Node node);
  const unsigned short START TO START = 0;
  const unsigned short START TO END = 1;
  const unsigned short END TO END = 2;
  const unsigned short END TO START = 3;
  short compareBoundaryPoints(unsigned short how, Range
```

```
sourceRange);
  [CEReactions] undefined deleteContents();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment extractContents();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment cloneContents();
  [CEReactions] undefined insertNode(Node node);
  [CEReactions] undefined surroundContents(Node newParent);
  [NewObject] Range cloneRange();
  undefined detach();
  boolean isPointInRange(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  short comparePoint(Node node, unsigned long offset);
  boolean intersectsNode(Node node);
  stringifier;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface NodeIterator {
  [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a> referenceNode;
  readonly attribute boolean pointerBeforeReferenceNode;
  readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
  readonly attribute <a href="NodeFilter">NodeFilter</a>? <a href="filter">filter</a>;
  Node? nextNode();
  Node? previousNode();
  undefined detach();
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface TreeWalker {
  [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
  readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
  readonly attribute <a href="NodeFilter">NodeFilter</a>? <a href="filter">filter</a>;
            attribute Node currentNode;
  Node? parentNode();
  Node? firstChild();
  Node? lastChild();
  Node? previousSibling();
  Node? nextSibling();
  Node? previousNode();
  Node? nextNode();
};
[Exposed=Window]
callback interface NodeFilter {
  // Constants for acceptNode()
  const unsigned short FILTER_ACCEPT = 1;
  const unsigned short FILTER REJECT = 2;
  const unsigned short FILTER SKIP = 3;
```

```
// Constants for whatToShow
  const unsigned long SHOW ALL = 0xFFFFFFF;
  const unsigned long SHOW ELEMENT = 0x1;
  const unsigned long SHOW ATTRIBUTE = 0x2;
  const unsigned long SHOW_TEXT = 0x4;
  const unsigned long SHOW CDATA SECTION = 0x8;
  const unsigned long SHOW ENTITY REFERENCE = 0x10; // legacy
  const unsigned long SHOW ENTITY = 0x20; // legacy
  const unsigned long SHOW PROCESSING INSTRUCTION = 0x40;
  const unsigned long SHOW COMMENT = 0x80;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT = 0x100;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT TYPE = 0x200;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT FRAGMENT = 0x400;
  const unsigned long SHOW NOTATION = 0x800; // legacy
  unsigned short acceptNode(Node node);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMTokenList {
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned long length</u>;
  getter DOMString? item(unsigned long index);
  boolean contains(DOMString token);
  [CEReactions] undefined add(DOMString... tokens);
  [CEReactions] undefined remove(DOMString... tokens);
  [CEReactions] boolean toggle(DOMString token, optional
boolean force);
  [CEReactions] boolean replace(DOMString token, DOMString
newToken);
  boolean supports(DOMString token);
  [CEReactions] stringifier attribute DOMString value;
  iterable<DOMString>;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface XPathResult {
  const unsigned short ANY TYPE = 0;
  const unsigned short NUMBER TYPE = 1;
  const unsigned short STRING TYPE = 2;
  const unsigned short BOOLEAN TYPE = 3;
  const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>UNORDERED</u> <u>NODE</u> <u>ITERATOR</u> <u>TYPE</u> = 4;
  const unsigned short ORDERED NODE ITERATOR TYPE = 5;
  const unsigned short UNORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE = 6;
  const unsigned short ORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE = 7;
  const unsigned short ANY_UNORDERED_NODE_TYPE = 8;
  const unsigned short FIRST ORDERED NODE TYPE = 9;
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned short</u> <u>resultType</u>;
  readonly attribute unrestricted double numberValue;
  readonly attribute DOMString stringValue;
  readonly attribute boolean booleanValue;
  readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="singleNodeValue">singleNodeValue</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="mailto:boolean">boolean</a> <a href="mailto:invalidIteratorState">invalidIteratorState</a>;
  readonly attribute unsigned long snapshotLength;
```

```
Node? iterateNext();
  Node? snapshotItem(unsigned long index);
[Exposed=Window]
interface XPathExpression {
  // XPathResult.ANY TYPE = 0
  XPathResult evaluate(Node contextNode, optional unsigned
short type = 0, optional XPathResult? result = null);
};
callback interface XPathNSResolver {
  DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI(DOMString? prefix);
};
interface mixin XPathEvaluatorBase {
  [NewObject] XPathExpression createExpression(DOMString
expression, optional XPathNSResolver? resolver = null);
  XPathNSResolver createNSResolver(Node nodeResolver);
  // XPathResult.ANY TYPE = 0
  <u>XPathResult</u> <u>evaluate(DOMString expression, Node contextNode,</u>
optional <u>XPathNSResolver</u>? <u>resolver</u> = null, optional <u>unsigned</u>
short type = 0, optional XPathResult? result = null);
Document includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
[Exposed=Window]
interface XPathEvaluator {
  constructor();
};
XPathEvaluator includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
```